PRO PATRIA
A LATIN STORY FOR BEGINNERS

PROF. E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, D. LITT.
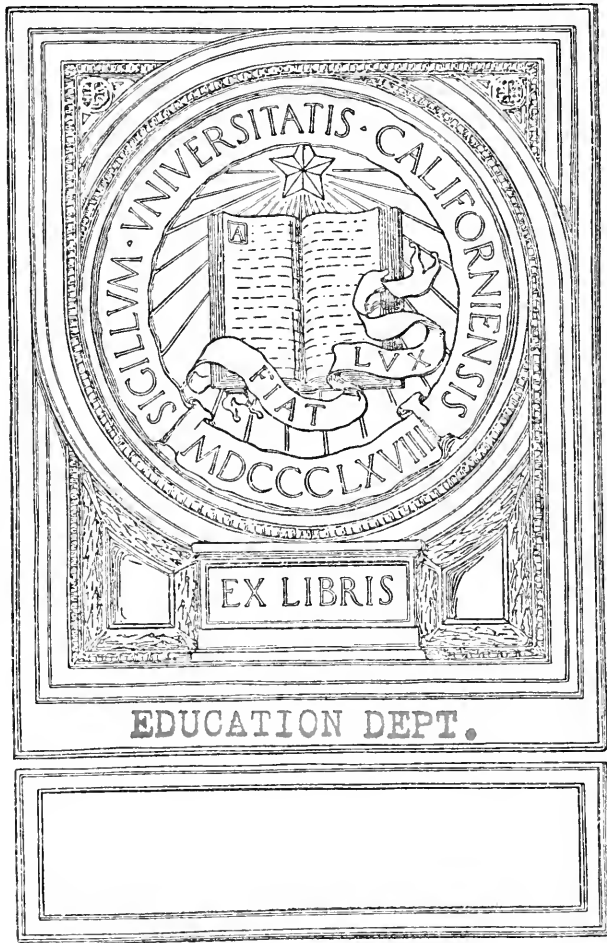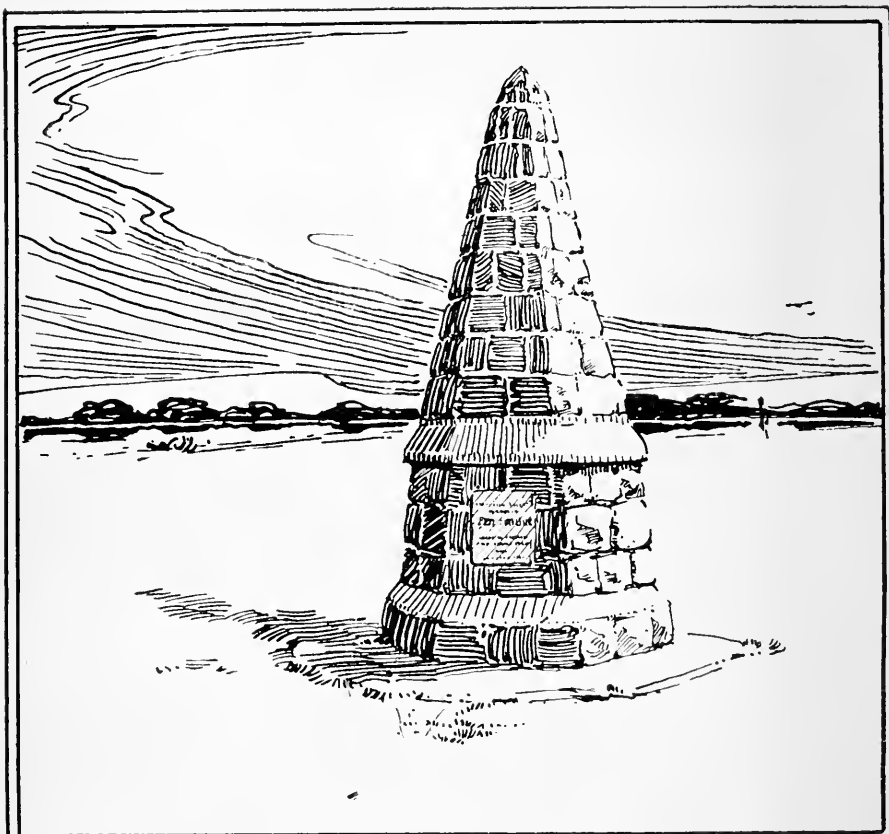
MONVMENTVM·IN·MEMORIAM
FREDERICI·HVGONIS
SHERSTON·ROBERTS·
AD·TVGELAM·FACTVM·

PRO PATRIA: A LATIN STORY FOR BEGINNERS, BEING A SEQUEL TO 'ORA MARITIMA,' WITH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES BY E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, D.LITT., OXON., PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF BIRMINGHAM

Qui procul hinc, the legend's writ,
The frontier grave is far away,
Qui ante diem periit;
Sed miles, sed pro patria.

HENRY NEWBOLT;

'Clifton Chapel.

FIRST ISSUE, 1903 ; REPRINTED 1907.

Preface

THE idea on which my *Ora Maritima* and its sequel, the present volume, are based, is that an interesting narrative may be a better vehicle for teaching the elements of a language than a collection of isolated grammar sentences, provided that the interesting narrative is so constructed and graduated as to constitute in itself a basis for the systematic study of grammar. My object, then, has been to write a book which should not only appeal to the minds of pupils through the interest of its subject matter, but also form as complete a grammatical ladder as the driest of dry exercise books. *Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.*

In carrying out this programme for *Pro Patria* I have adhered to the ideal which I set up for myself in *Ora Maritima*, that the Latin text should be 'classical in form, but modern in setting.' The scene is laid in a country house on the coast of Kent, and afterwards at Winchester, and the time of the action is the period from September 1899 to June 1900. I have thus been enabled to give unity of action to the two parts into which the narrative falls. The first part is taken up with a study of Roman Britain in connexion with a visit to Richborough Castle ; the second with the Boer War, the first news of which arrives soon after the conclusion of the summer holidays. It is my hope that my young readers may find in the first part a more vivid picture of the condition of Britain under the Romans than is contained in most school histories of England ; and in the treatment of the Boer War I have endeavoured to bring out its dramatic interest and heroic incidents. Party politics are, of course, kept out of view.

The amount of grammar covered by *Pro Patria*[1] may seem to some teachers disproportionately small ; and, no doubt, if it had been my object simply to teach grammar, I might have made the text shorter. But a long experience in teaching Latin to pupils of very various ages and stages has made me sceptical as to the value of a skin-deep knowledge of grammar. It is one thing to learn declensions and conjugations out of a grammar or from grammar sentences, and quite another thing to know them as they appear in actual life. How many boys and girls leave school without having acquired any real mastery even of the simplest kind of Latin or the power of making any practical use of the grammatical facts which they have so laboriously learned ! That is the sort of educational result on which the present outcry against Latin in schools is largely based. The great mistake seems to be that the elementary stages of learning are turned into a purely grammatical discipline and that the grammar is hurried over before the study of the language proper and the literature are commenced. Declensions and conjugations learned in this fashion find no real lodgment in the mind ; or, at best, the outcome of the tedious process is that the pupil ' holds the parts in his hand,' but misses ' the spirit that binds them together.'[2] It is against this abstract method of teaching that *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* are a protest. It has been my object to write for the use of the beginner a ' real book,' which shall have a literary as well as a linguistic interest of its own, and from which the pupil shall gain something more than a bowing acquaintance with Nouns and Verbs. I have, therefore, not shunned repetitions ; and I have deliberately aimed at providing a certain

---

[1] The point from which *Pro Patria* starts is that which is reached in *Ora Maritima,* and the pupil is carried on to the end of the regular accidence.

[2] *Dann hat er die Teile in seiner Hand ;*
Fehlt, leider ! nur das geistige Band.
                                        —GOETHE, *Faust.*

mass of easy Latin from which he may acquire the habit of reading, as distinct from construing, Latin. If, at the end of two [1] years' work, the pupil has acquired this, together with the fundamentals of Latin grammar, he will have spent his time to some purpose, and will be in a position to begin the study of a classical author and of the more difficult parts of the grammar with some hope of a happy issue. Or if, on the other hand, he drops the study of Latin at this point, he will still have acquired a working knowledge of the language up to a certain level. This is an aspect of the matter on which I desire to lay some stress. There are many schools, or modern sides of schools, in which only a limited amount of time can be devoted to Latin ; and the problem is how can that time be spent so as to produce the most profitable result. It is my hope that the present book may contribute to the solution of this problem.

It is not my intention that an equal amount of time and attention should be bestowed on all the sections of the text. Some of them (marked with a †) are unnecessary from the purely grammatical point of view ; they exist for the purpose of carrying on the story and providing material for rapid reading ; and where time presses they may be translated by the teacher to the class. The exercises and conversations are intended to be used as the needs of particular classes may demand. For translation into Latin alternative passages are given, from which the teacher may select what best suits his purpose. Some of them may be worked on paper, some *viva voce,* some may be omitted altogether. I have thought it better to give too much rather than too little.

One of my young friends who was learning from this book made a criticism of it which will probably pass through the minds of other readers. " The Romans," he said, " knew nothing of South Africa." Exactly ; but it is possible that the best

---

[1] It is intended that *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* shall occupy one year each.

way to learn an ancient language is to study it as written at the
present day in connexion with a subject matter which is familiar
or easily intelligible to the modern reader. This is, of course,
only a means to an end ; but there are many ends which are
better attained indirectly than directly.

I have ventured on some novelties in the realm of grammar
teaching, among which the use of the term ' Injunctive,' side
by side with ' Subjunctive,' calls for a word of explanation.
The new term expresses the fundamental idea of what is com-
monly called the ' Subjunctive Mood ' ; it is the mood of *desire*,
and should be introduced to the pupil in the first instance in
connexion with sentences like ' God save the King.' [1]   For such
meanings the term Subjunctive is quite inappropriate, and a
fruitful source of error ; it comes in, however, so soon as the
mood appears in a subordinate clause.   And if the pupil subse-
quently abandons the term *Injunctive* altogether, it will never-
theless have served its purpose in introducing him to a right
conception of the mood—a conception which will serve him in
good stead afterwards.

My best thanks are due to Dr. J. E. Sandys, Public Orator
in the University of Cambridge, for permission to quote some
verses which originally appeared in his Latin speeches to the
University,[2] and for his great kindness in reading my proof
sheets of the text and making many valuable suggestions.

<div style="text-align: right">E. A. S.</div>

The University, Birmingham,
       July, 1903.

Note to the New Issue.—No changes have been made in the
present issue, with the exception of the correction of a few mis-
prints and the addition of a Summary of Grammatical Rules
(pp. 182 ff.)

---

[1] See Preparations, §§ 48, 49, 50.
[2] These are acknowledged in their places in the " Preparations."

Contents

PRO PATRIA

BRITANNIA
ROMANA

Milia Passuum

Mons Graupius

PICTI

Bodotria

Vallum Antonini

Clota

CALEDONIA

HIBERNIA

Vallum Hadriani   Segedunum
Luguvallium.   Fons Aelii

BRIGANTES

.Eburacum

Mona

Deva

?Trisantona Fl.

ORDOVICES

CORITANI

Viroconium

ICENI

Sabrina Fl.

SILURES

Camulodunum

Verulamium

Isca

Tamesa Fl.   CASSI   TRINOBANTES

Londinium

Tanatis I.

BE

Calleva

Durovernum   Rutupiae
              Dubrae

GAE

.Venta

Anderida
Silva

Gessoriacum

GALLIA

Vectis I.

FRETUM GALLICUM
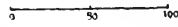
Antonius fecit

I. Mensis September.

[Adjectives of Third Declension in —, *is, e.*]

1. Kalendae sunt hodie Septembres. Primus 1
mensis feriarum elapsus est, et scholae instant. Nam
ante finem mensis Septembris apud magistrum 3
meum ero. Et per ultimam partem feriarum necesse
est libris duas horas cotidie dare. Sic imperat patruus
meus. Mane igitur plerumque lectito. Patruus
autem mihi librum Taciti de vita Agricolae, ducis 7
celebris Romanorum, dedit. Multa insunt de Bri-
tannia nostra antiqua. Vita Agricolae multum me
delectat. Nonnullis tamen in locis difficilis est et
obscura. Sed animo alacri lectito, quia patruus meus 11
difficilia et obscura explicat, et tabulis pictis
aedificiorum, armorum, nummorum, viarum illustrat.
Ubi aliquid in Vita Agricolae deest, ibi patruus
meus capita ex Annalibus Taciti vel ex Historia
Anglica recitat. Amici mei, Marcus et Alexander,
interdum adsunt dum recitat. Nam saepe nos
visitant. Post prandium plerumque ambulamus,
vel ludo trigonali operam damus, vel in mari
natamus.

3

II. Britannia Liberata.

[*is, ea, id.*—Singular Number.]

2. Gaius Iulius Caesar, postquam copias suas
pedestres et equestres ex Britannia in Galliam trans-
portavit, nihil amplius de Britannis cogitavit. Ab
incolis litoris meridiani victoriam reportaverat, ad
flumen Tamesam penetraverat, oppidum Cassi-
vellauni expugnaverat, magnum numerum cap-
tivorum in servitutem venumdederat, tributum
Britannis imperaverat. Id ei satis erat. Sed
Britanniam non revera debellaverat, nec victoria
eius magna fuerat. Tacitus eum non magnam
victoriam reportavisse in capite tertio decimo Vitae
Agricolae affirmat. "Divus Iulius" inquit "Bri-
tanniam Romanis monstravit, sed non debellavit."
Britanni autem viri animo forti erant. Tributum
et servitutem non tolerabant. Et Romanis post

tempora C. Iulii Caesaris longa oblivio erat Bri-
tanniae. Nam per multos annos bellum domes-
ticum civitatem Romanam vexavit. Post finem
eius belli Romani Augustum principem creaverunt.
Ei Britannia non curae erat. Nec principes secundus
et tertius, Tiberius et Caligula, insulam nostram
intraverunt ; quamquam Caligula de ea intranda
cogitavit.

III. Cunobelinus.

[*ei, eae, ea*—Plural Number.]

3. Itaque per centum fere annos reges Britannici vel reginae Britannicae in Britannia regnaverunt, nec Romani Britannos bello vexaverunt. In numero eorum regum erat Cunobelinus. Is 4 revera " Britannorum rex " erat : sic eum Suetonius, 5 scriptor Romanus, nominat. Nam quamquam non omnes gentes Britannicae ei subiectae erant, tamen 7 magnam partem gentium Britanniae mediterraneae et meridianae in unum regnum consociaverat. Caput earum gentium Camulodunum erat. Exstant 10 hodie nummi Cunobelini ; in eis nomen regis vel 11 litteras nonnullas eius nominis lectitare possumus : 12

exstant quoque nummi patris eius Tasciovani et 13 fratris eius Epaticci. Cunobelinus multos annos regnavit ; eo fere tempore rex Britannorum erat 15 cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Romanorum erant. Ei ab anno quarto decimo ad annum primum 17 et quadragesimum post Christum natum imperio Romano praeerant.   Iesus Christus natus erat 19 dum Augustus princeps erat : morti datus erat 20 dum Tiberius imperitabat, ut Tacitus in capite quarto et quadragesimo libri quinti decimi Annalium commemorat. Inter filios Cunobelini erant Carac- 23 tacus et Togodumnus.

1 † 4. Is rex magnus et bonus erat, atque defensor
acer libertatis Britannicae. Sed Romani tantum
regem tolerare non poterant. Itaque de nova
expeditione contra Britanniam cogitabant. Poetae
5 Romani eius aetatis insulam nostram et incolas
6 eius saepe commemorant. Horatius eos " feros "
et " remotos " et " intactos " (id est " non debel-
latos " vel " liberos ") nominat : Vergilius eos " toto
orbe terrarum divisos " (id est " separatos ") vocat.
Mare eos ab aliis partibus orbis terrarum separabat ;
11 et libertas eis cara erat.   Pro aris et focis suis
contra Romanos magna virtute pugnaverant, atque
hostibus Romanorum in bello Gallico auxilia
14 subministraverant.   Itaque Romani libertatem
eorum non tolerabant.

NUMMUS AUGUSTI

(CAPUT AUGUSTI)   (FIGURA SPHINGIS)

IV. Caractacus.*

[*eius* and *suus, a, um* contrasted.]

† 5. Post mortem Cunobelini, Claudius, quartus princeps Romanorum, expeditionem contra Britannos paravit. Consilium eius erat totam Britanniam debellare et cum imperio Romano consociare. Itaque anno tertio et quadragesimo uni ex ducibus suis, Aulo Plautio, magnum numerum copiarum pedestrium et equestrium mandavit. Eae meridianam partem insulae nostrae facile occupaverunt. Oppidum Camulodunum expugnaverunt, ubi Romani post paucos annos coloniam veteranorum collocaverunt. Ea prima urbs Romana in Britannia fuit. Propter victoriam a Britannis reportatam princeps Romanus filio suo nomen Britannico dedit. Filius eius priore anno natus erat. Sed Britanni nondum debellati erant. In silvas montesque Cambriae se occultaverunt, ubi duae gentes bellicosae, Ordovices et Silures, per septem annos contra Romanos fortiter bellaverunt. Copiis Britannicis Caractacus, filius Cunobelini, praeerat. Nomen eius per totam Britanniam celebre erat. Non facile erat eas gentes Cambriae debellare. Reliquiae castrorum Romanorum Viroconii, Devae, Iscae hodie exstant. Sed legiones Romanae tandem victrices fuerunt, et Silures Ordovicesque magno proelio superaverunt. Deinde ducem eorum audacem et insignem Romam captivum deportaverunt.

3
6
8
9
11
13
14
16
19
20
22
25
26

---

* Tacitus ducem Silurum *Caratacum* (non *Caractacum*) vocat.
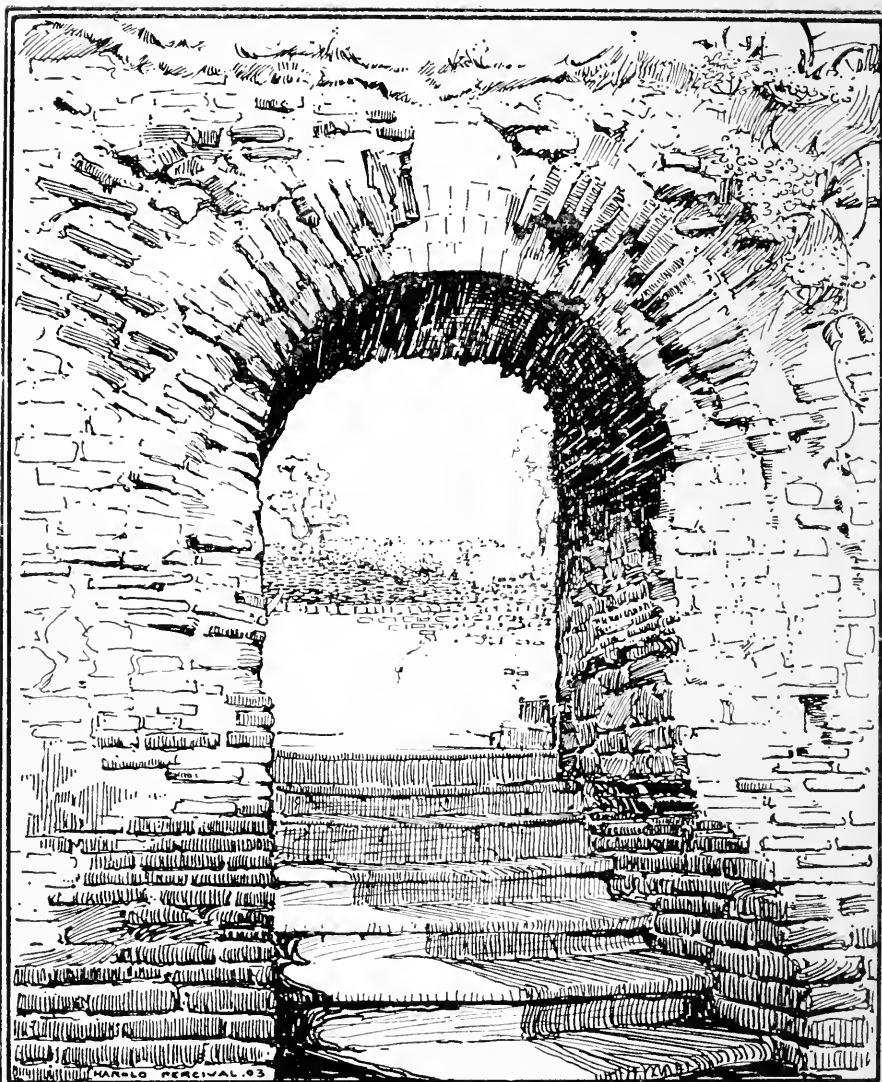
PORTA·OCCIDENTALIS·
COLONIAE·CAMVLODVNI

8

[*ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*]

6. Nomen Caractaci iam per totam Italiam celebre erat ; nam victoriam Romanorum per novem annos retardaverat. Et omnes homines cupidi erant regem Britannorum ipsum spectandi. 4 Itaque Claudius populum ad grande spectaculum convocavit. Magna multitudo captivorum Britannicorum una-cum Caractaco ipso et uxore fratri- 7 busque eius in catenis aderant. Tum ceteri captivi 8 veniam principis imploraverunt. Sed Caractacus ipse 9 animum audacem et vere Britannicum praestitit. Ante oculos principis ipsius collocatus " Rex sum " 11 inquit " et a regibus claris oriundus : fuerunt mihi viri, equi, arma. Non mirum est si contra vos Romanos pro libertate pugnavi. Vos toti orbi 14 terrarum imperitandi cupidi estis ; sed nobis 15 Britannis non mos est servitutem tolerare. Mortem non formido." Tum princeps propter admirationem tantae audaciae veniam libertatemque Caractaco ipsi et uxori fratribusque eius dedit. Sic Tacitus 19 in capite septimo et tricesimo libri duodecimi Annalium narrat.

V. Boadicea.*

[*ille, illa, illud.*]

7. Anno post Christum natum primo et sexagesimo Britanni rebellaverunt. Suetonius Paulinus, unus ex ducibus Neronis, quinti principis Romanorum, Britanniae tum praeerat. Ille in Monam 4 insulam penetravit, ubi magnum numerum Druid-

* Tacitus reginam Icenorum *Boudiccam* (non *Boadiceam*) vocat.

arum trucidavit, et fana eorum vastavit.   Sed dum
7 ille in Cambria abest, Iceni cum Cassis et Trinoban-
tibus aliisque gentibus Britannicis se contra Romanos
consociant.   Non mirum est si Britanni coloniam
10 illam Camulodunum, ubi veterani illi Romani
collocati erant, non amabant.   Nam veterani eos
omnibus iniuriis vexabant.   Uxores liberosque
eorum in servitutem deportabant.   Viros ipsos
ignavos et servos vocabant.   Oppidum iam viis et
aedificiis Romanis ornaverant, sed muris non firma-
16 verant.   Inter illa aedificia templum " Divi Claudii "
erat ;   nam principem mortuum Romani pro deo
18 adorabant.   Et in illo templo simulacrum Victoriae
collocatum erat.

1   8. Itaque Boadicea, regina illa audax Iceno-
rum, inter ordines Britannicos in essedo suo equitans,
Britannos suos ad rebellionem incitavit.   " Auscul-
tate " inquit " Iceni et Cassi ; auscultate Coritāni,
5 Trinobantes !   Di nostri nobis victoriam, illis cladem
mortemque parant !   Ecce, colonia Camulodunum
defensoribus nudata est !   Copiae Romanae in
finibus Ordovicum longe absunt, ubi fana Druidarum
vastant.   Coloniam illam, ubi pauci tantum veterani
cum uxoribus liberisque suis habitant, facile erit
11 expugnare.   Illos nulla patria ad virtutem incitat ;
nos patria et penates, nos libertas ad arma vocat.
Atque di ipsi nobis omen victoriae et imperii ded-
14 erunt.   Nam simulacrum illud Victoriae praecipita-
- verunt.   Et Druidae alia portenta nuntiant.   Terrae
adhuc ignotae Britannis aliquando subiectae erunt.
17 Ubi Caesares numquam steterunt, ibi filii nostri
vel filii filiorum imperitabunt.   Vos coloniam illam

crudelem expugnate ! Templum dei illius falsi 19
cremate ! Viros, feminas, liberos trucidate ! Illud 20
est consilium feminae. Num vos viri minus fortes 21
eritis ? "

BOADICEA
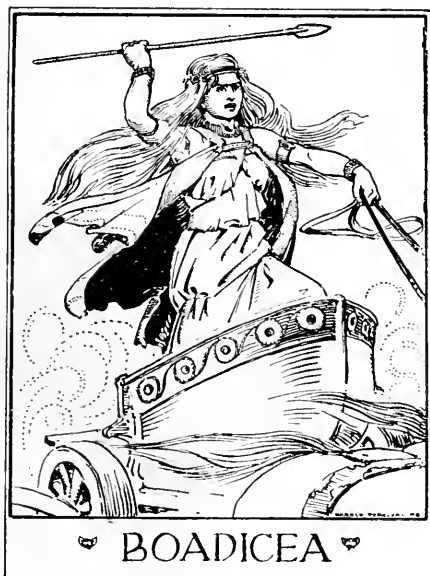
† 9. Britanni ad arma volant. Coloniam Camu-
lodunum expugnant ; templum illud Claudii, ubi
veterani se occultaverant, cremant. Interea
Suetonius ex insula Mona cum decem milibus 4
virorum ad Tamesam properavit. Nam Londinium,
quamquam nondum colonia Romana erat, tamen
iam tum copia mercatorum et navigiorum celebre 7
erat. Sic Tacitus in capite tertio et tricesimo libri
quarti decimi Annalium affirmat. Sed urbem ex
clade servare non poterat. Britanni Londinium

et Verulamium oppugnant, septuaginta milia
12 Romanorum trucidant, ingentem praedam captant.
13 Suetonius suos prope silvam collocaverat, et se ad
proelium parabat. Britanni Romanos numero
virorum multum superabant, et exspectatione
16 victoriae triumphabant. Sed pauci illi Romani
magnam victoriam reportaverunt ; Britanni contra
legiones Romanas stare non poterant, quia Romani
eos pondere armorum et scientia belli multum super-
abant In illo proelio Romani octoginta milia
virorum et feminarum trucidaverunt ; nam Britanni
22 feminas suas in vehiculis apportaverant, proelii
23 spectandi causa. Boadicea ipsa se morti dedit.

VI. Britannia pacata.

[*hic, haec, hoc.*]

1   10. Hic fuit finis rebellionis Boadiceae. Sed
Romani nondum totam insulam pacaverant. Nam
Britannia provincia turbulenta erat, ut Tacitus
affirmat ; et Britanni occidentales et septentrionales
victoriam Romanorum adhuc retardabant. Totam
6 insulam pacare consilium erat Vespasiani, noni
principis Romanorum Itaque anno duodeocto-
gesimo post Christum natum Iulio Agricolae sum-
mum imperium legionum Britannicarum mandavit.
10 Huius viri clari vitam Tacitus narravit. Uxor
11 Taciti filia Agricolae erat. Hunc virum Tacitus
magnopere amabat, et memoriam eius monumento
pulchro consecravit : monumentum est liber ille
de vita eius. Vir iustus, humanus, clemens erat,
si testimonium Taciti verum est.

11. Primo anno imperii sui Agricola in Cambria bellavit, ubi magnam victoriam ab Ordovicibus reportavit. Hanc gentem fere totam trucidavit, 3 si Tacitus vera affirmat. Tum insulam Monam occupavit. Naves ei deerant ; sed sub signis Romanis nonnullae cohortes Batavorum militabant. Hi periti erant natandi, et trans fretum nataverunt. 7 Tertio anno Agricola contra Brigantes aliasque gentes septentrionales Britanniae bellavit. Sexto anno classem comparavit. Dum haec oram mari- 10 timam Caledoniae explorat, ipse cum copiis pedes- 11 tribus et equestribus per Devam et Luguvallium in Caledoniam usque ad Clotam et Bodotriam penetrat. Totam regionem castellis firmat. Sed Caledonii trans Clotam et Bodotriam, velut in 15 alteram insulam, se congregant. Proximo anno Romani in partes interiores Caledoniae penetrant. Ibi, prope Montem Graupium, dux Caledonius, 18 Galgacus vel Calgacus nomine, suos ad proelium his verbis incitat. 20

12. " Haec pugna, ut spero, causa libertatis 1 perpetuae toti Britanniae erit. Nobis Caledonibus 2 servitus adhuc ignota est. Hi montes, hae silvae, 3 haec maria nobis libertatem dederunt. Sed nunc 4 in hunc angulum remotum Britanniae Romani 5 penetraverunt. Adsunt, velut lupi saevi ; nec Oriens nec Occidens eos satiavit. Ne mare quidem 7 nostrum a periculo classis Romanae tutum est. Terra marique hanc insulam oppugnant. Itaque 9 nullam veniam exspectate, si illi in hoc proelio vic- toriam reportaverint. Vos ipsos et uxores liberosque vestros trucidabunt vel in servitutem 12

13 deportabunt; et cum totam terram vastaverint, solitudinem pacem vocabunt. Sed nondum 'pacata'
15 est haec Caledonia. Iceni et Trinobantes Coloniam Romanam expugnaverunt et cremaverunt. Femina facinoris illius praeclari dux erat. Num vos, viri Caledonii, minus fortes eritis ? Hodie pacem illam Romanam a vobis ipsis et uxoribus liberisque vestris propulsate. Patria ipsa vos ad pugnam et victoriam vocat ! ''

1 † 13. Interea Agricola quoque suos in hunc modum ad proelium incitat. " Hic septimus est annus, milites, postquam Ordovices debellavistis. Hodie a Caledonibus victoriam reportate.
5 Hi se in silvis montibusque suis adhuc occulta-
6 verunt ; hos, homines ignavos, facile in fugam dabitis." Et signum pugnandi dedit. Tres legiones Romanae et undecim milia auxiliorum in campo lato stabant : Caledones in collibus suos collocaverant. Primo Caledones missilia Romanorum vitabant. Et ipsi multa missilia in Romanos iactabant. Sed tandem cohortes illae Batavorum ad colles appropinquaverunt, et Caledones ex loco
14 propulsaverunt. Nam hi iustum proelium tolerare non poterant. Interea equites auxiliorum eos velut indagine circumdederant. Decem milia trucidaverunt vel vulneraverunt. Nonnulli ex
18 Caledonibus uxores liberosque suos ipsi morti dederunt. Nox finis fuit trucidationis. Postridie atrox spectaculum erat : corpora inhumata, casae crematae, silentium, solitudo.

VII. Pax Romana.

[Comparatives of Adjectives.]

14. Postquam hoc caput in vita Agricolae
lectitavimus, patruus meus "Haec narrat Taci-
tus ipse" inquit : "sed si testimonium eius verum
est, nullus victor Romanus humanior, nullus cle- 4
mentior fuit quam Iulius Agricola. Nulla autem 5
provincia turbulentior fuerat quam Britannia. 6
Nulli hostes Romanorum fortiores, nulli audaciores 7
fuerant quam Britanni et Caledones et gentes
Cambriae. Quis ex omnibus Romanis se iustiorem 9
in hostes debellatos praestitit, quis clementiorem,
quis minus saevum et crudelem, quam Agricola ?
Sed quid inhumanius, quid saevius est quam 12
bellum ? Atque nulli hostes in bello crudeliores 13
fuerunt quam Romani. Nihil minus clemens erat
quam hostes debellatos in servitutem deportare.
Nam mors pulchra minus misera est quam servitus.
Omnibus hominibus vita cara est ; sed viris liberis
libertas carior est quam vita. Atque nulli homines 18
unquam acriores defensores libertatis suae fuerunt 19
quam Britanni. Nihil pulchrius existimabant 20
quam libertatem, nihil miserius quam servitutem." 21

[Superlatives of Adjectives.]

15. "Omnia bella saeva et inhumana sunt.
Omnium autem bellorum saevissima et inhuman- 2
issima fuerunt bella illa temporibus antiquis
contra gentes barbaras pugnata. Romani hostes 4
crudelissimi plerumque fuerunt. Sed quid utilius 5
fuit toti orbi terrarum quam imperium Romanum ?
Et imperio Romano nullum maius periculum erat

CALLEVA ATRE-
BATUM.

SEPULCHRA

PORTA
SEPTENTRIONALIS

RELIQUIAE FOSSAE

AMPHITHEATRUM

PORTA
ORIENTALIS

FOSSA

BALNEAE

HOSPITIUM

PORTA
MERIDIANA

TEMPLUM

BASILICA

FORUM

MVRVS

PORTA
OCCIDEN
TALIS

FOSSA

MVRVS

Antonius fecit

RELIQUIAE VILLAE
ROMANAE IN INSULA
VECTI SITAE.

A. Atrium
B. Triclinium
C. Culina
D. Vestibulum
E. Puteus

XX PASSUS

0   x   xx

A

B

C

D

16
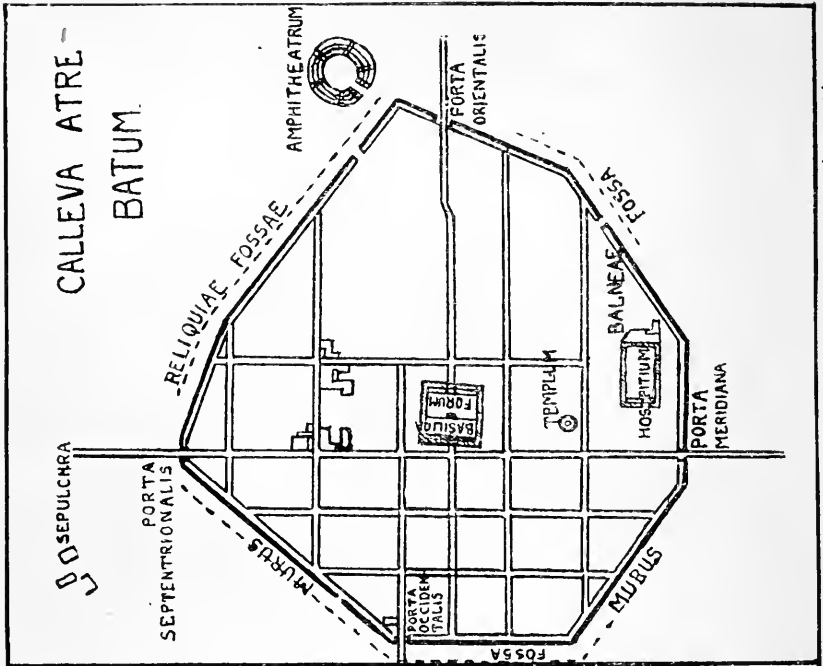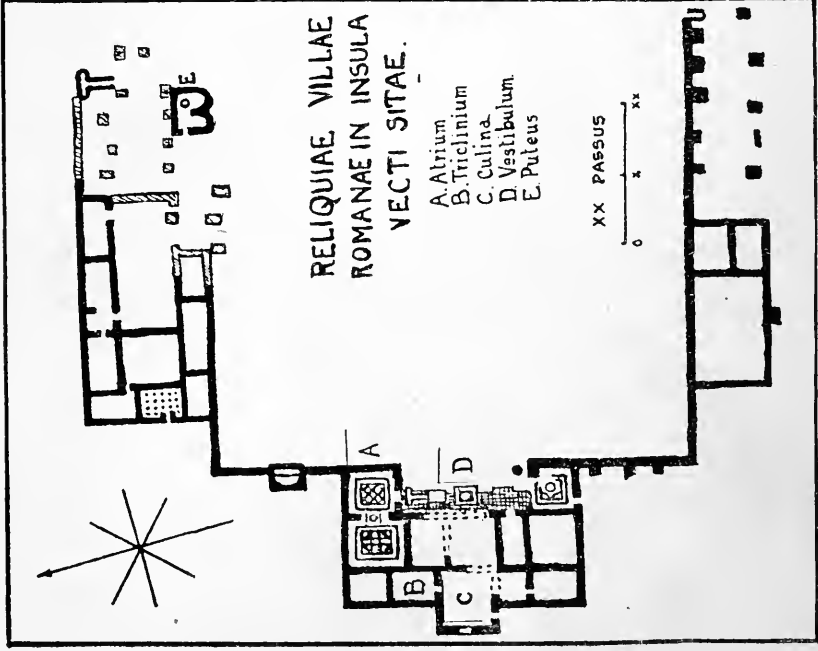
quam rebelliones populorum barbarorum. Pax
illa Romana etiam populis subiectis utilissima 9
fuit. Homines feros et inhumanos a studio bel-
landi ad vitam humaniorem et ad litteras, artes,
scientias revocavit. Romani Britanniam viis opti- 12
mis et aedificiis pulcherrimis celeberrimisque, templis, 13
basilicis, foris, villis, ludis litterariis, ornaverunt.
In ludis litterariis filii principum Britannicorum
linguae Latinae operam dabant. Itaque Britanni
iram iniuriasque suas paulatim oblivioni dabant.
Libertatis suae defensores fortissimi et acerrimi 18
fuerant. Sed tributum Romanum tolerabant, si
iniuriae aberant. Multae hodie exstant in Bri-
tannia reliquiae aedificiorum illorum Romanorum.
Callevae Atrebatum reliquias pulcherrimas basilicae, 22
fori, templi, amphitheatri, balnearum, murorum
spectavi; et in insula Vecti exstant pavimenta 24
tessellata villae Romanae, primo saeculo post
Christum natum aedificatae. Sed iam ante tempora
Agricolae nonnullae ex gentibus Britannicis medio- 27
criter humanae fuerant. Incolas Cantii Caesar in
libro quinto Belli Gallici 'omnium Britannorum
humanissimos' vocat."

[Passive Voice of 1st Conjugation—Present, Past, Imperf.,
Future.]

16. Medius erat mensis September cum patruus
meus haec de Britannia Romana explicavit. Mar-
cus et Alexander tum aderant : nam pridie Dubris
adventaverant et apud nos pernoctaverant. Et
patruo meo necesse erat eis de rebellione Galgaci et
Caledonum narrare. Nam historia patriae suae
magnopere delectantur. Tum ille " Nonne recte " 7
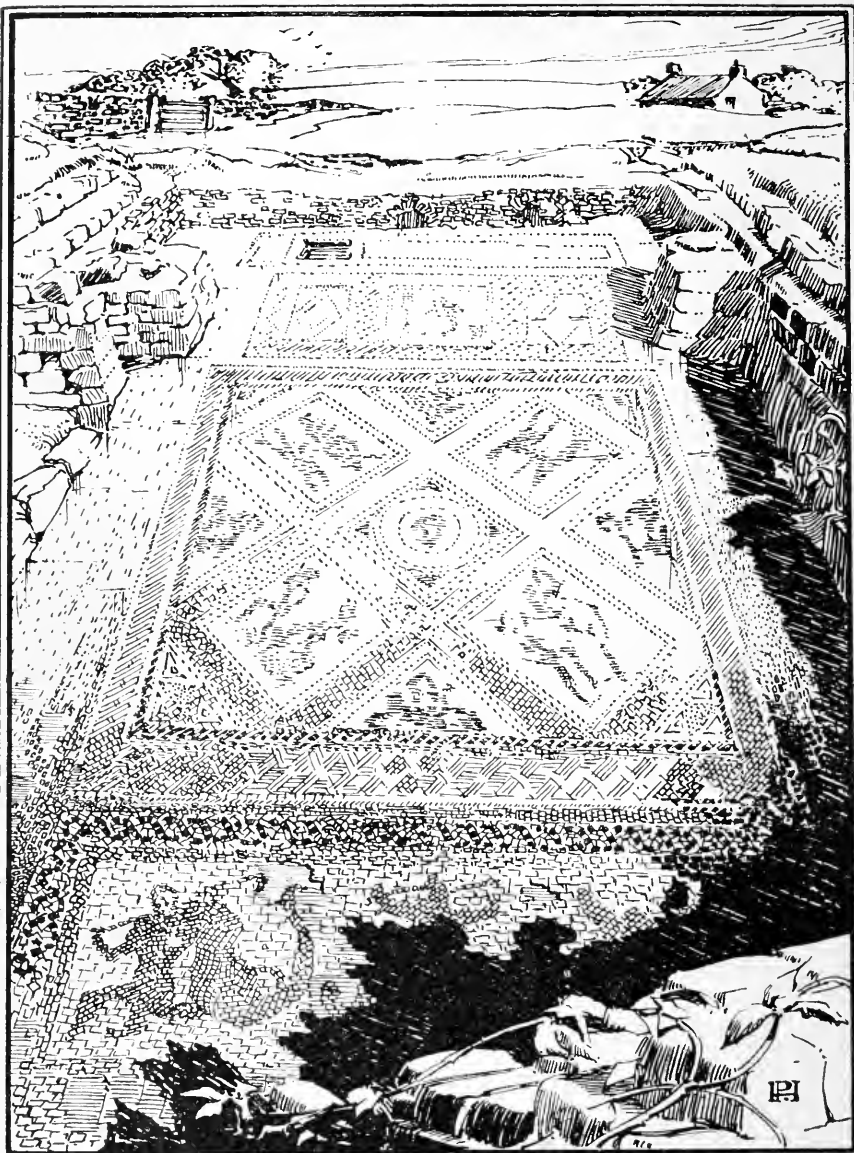
PAVIMENTVM·TESSELLATVM·VILLAE·ROMANAE
IN·INSVLA·VECTI·SITAE

inquit "Agricola a Tacito laudatur? Nam ab [8]
aliis imperatoribus Romanis oppida expugnabantur, [9]
agri vastabantur, nationes barbarae debellabantur ; [10]
sed Agricola Britannos non solum debellavit sed
etiam ad vitam humaniorem revocavit." Et
Alexander "Magnopere delector" inquit "si victor [13]
iustus et clemens fuit. Sed num hic vir omnia illa
aedificia Romana aedificavit?" Et ille "Bri-
tannia per quattuor saecula aedificiis Romanis [16]
ornabatur. Multae ex illis reliquiis posterioris [17]
aetatis sunt."

17. Tum Marcus "Num filii principum Bri-
tannicorum studio linguae Latinae delectabantur?" [2]
inquit. Et ille "Filii Britannorum antiquorum
animo acri et impigro erant ; linguae Latinae [4]
libenter operam dabant. Agricola eos aptiores esse
ad studia litterarum affirmabat quam Gallorum
pueros. Et Martialis, poeta Romanus illius
aetatis, Britannos carmina sua cantavisse affirmat. [8]
Vos hodierni pila et folle delectamini." Et ego [9]
"Nonne tu ipse, patrue mi patruissime, corporis [10]
certaminibus delectaris? Magna est scientia [11]
pilam dextra laevaque captare." Et ille "Adule-
scentulus" inquit "illa scientia satis delectabar ; [13]
cum senex fuero, fortasse non delectabor." Nos [14]
cachinnamus. Nam patruus meus ludo trigonali
magnopere delectatur. Tu, mi patrue, huius ludi
peritissimus es :

> Nec tibi mobilitas minor est, si forte volantem [18]
> Aut geminare pilam iuvat aut revocare cadentem [19]

ut est apud poetam Romanum. Mutato nomine de [20]
te, patrue, fabula narratur.

VIII. Castellum Rutupinum.

[Questions and Exclamations.]

† 18. Postridie inter ientaculum amita mea
" Caelum hodie serenissimum est " inquit : "cur
3 non Rutupias hodie ambulatis ? " Et ego " Cur
non tu quoque, amita, et Lydia nobiscum ambu-
latis ? " " Nimis longa est via " inquit. Sed
patruus meus " Vehiculo commeare potestis. Quota
hora nunc est ? " Et illa " Nondum tertia hora
est." Tum ille " Quinta hora in viam vos date :
9 ante nos Rutupias adventabitis. Cum ruinas castelli
spectaverimus, omnes in vehiculo una domum pro-
perabimus." Tum Lydia " Quantopere delectabor
si ruinas Castelli Rutupini aliquando spectare
potero ! " Et amitae meae propositum gratissi-
14 mum erat. " Sed nonne melius erit " inquit " in
castello cenare ? Nam sic non necesse erit domum
16 festinare." Tum nos pueri exclamavimus : " Euge
optime ! prandium nobiscum portabimus ; post
prandium ruinas castelli visitabimus. Deinde in
castello cenabimus. Sic erit ! " Et amita mea
20 " Quando in viam vos dabitis ? " inquit. Et nos
" Statim sine mora " inquimus.

[*qui, quae, quod* and *quis, quid*—in questions.]

19. Inter viam Marcus patruum meum de vic-
2 toria illa a Caledonibus reportata interrogavit.

3 *Marcus.*—Quis fuit ille Galgacus ? Num rex
antiquus Scotorum fuit ?

Patruus meus.—Nulli Scoti eo tempore in
Caledonia erant. Nondum in Caledoniam migra-
verant.

M.—Quid igitur erat nomen incolarum Cale- 8
doniae, si non Scoti erant ?

P.—Caledonia eo tempore a Pictis aliisque
gentibus Caledoniis habitabatur.

M.—Qui erant Picti ? 12

P.—Difficilis est quaestio. De origine Pictorum
viri docti disputant.

M.—Quo tempore Scoti in Caledoniam migra- 15
verunt ?

P.—Quinto saeculo post Christum natum.

M.—Qua ex terra migraverunt ? 18

P.—Ex Hibernia eos in Caledoniam migravisse
scriptores historici affirmant.

M.—Quem igitur primum regem Scotorum 21
fuisse affirmant ?

P.—Fergus primus rex Scotorum nominatur.

M.—Cuius partis Caledoniae rex fuit ? 24

P.—Partis meridianae.

M.—Itaque Galgacus fortasse Pictus fuit.

P.—Fortasse ; sed nihil de eo notum est.

[*qui, quae, quod*—in clauses which are not questions.]

20. Tum Alexander " Caledonia " inquit " ut
spero, nunquam subiecta fuit Romanis : nam
maiores mei ex Caledonia oriundi sunt." Nos
cachinnamus. Et patruus meus " Caledones per
quattuor illa saecula saepe rebellaverunt, et Romanos
bello vexaverunt. Itaque necesse fuit Hadriano,
qui secundo saeculo post Christum natum princeps 7
Romanorum fuit, magnum illud vallum inter
Luguvallium et Pontem Aelium vel Segedunum
aedificare ; cuius reliquiae hodie spectantur. Et 10
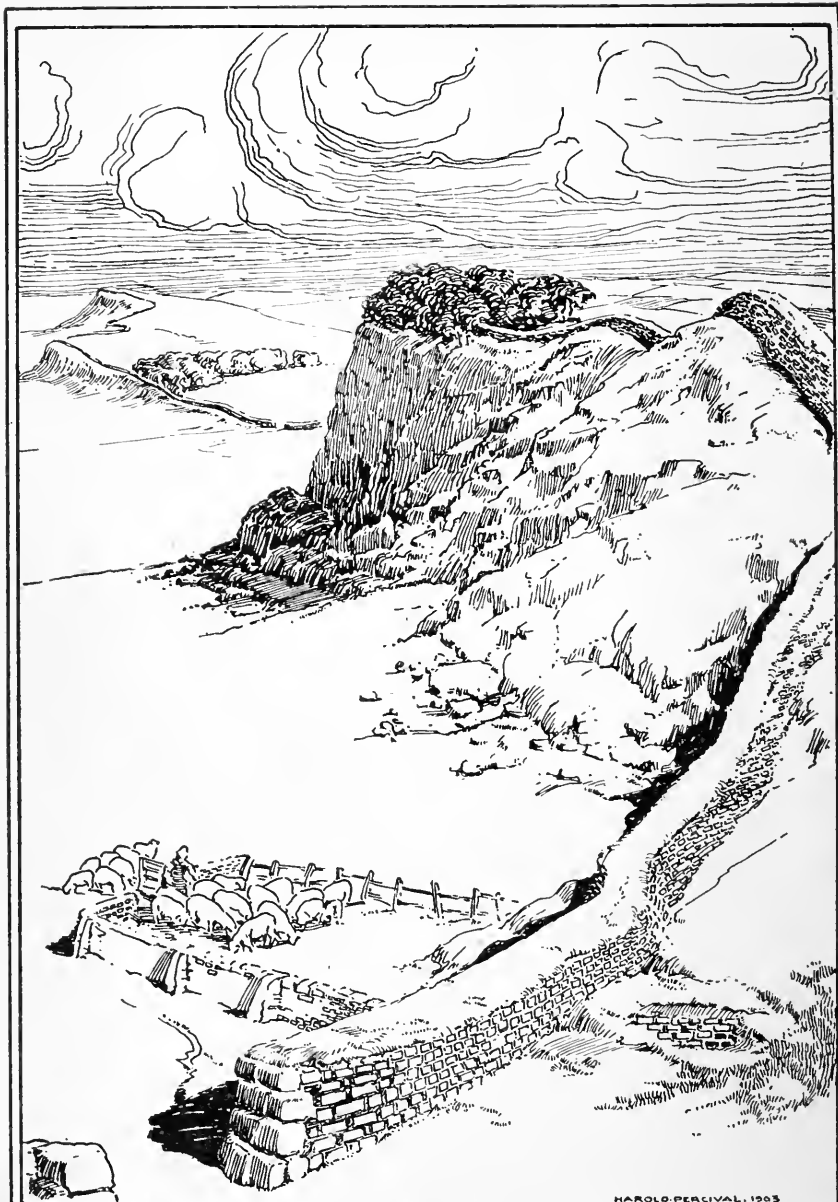
VALLVM·HADRIANI

Antoninus Pius, qui post eum princeps fuit, alterum 11
vallum in ipsa Caledonia inter Clotam et Bodotriam
aedificavit : cui nomen hodiernum est *Graham's* 13
Dyke. Initio tertii saeculi Septimius Severus, quem 14
Romani paucis annis ante principem creaverant, 15
maximam expeditionem contra Caledones com-
paravit ; postea autem ipse aegrotavit et Eburaci 17
exspiravit. Quo anno quinquaginta milia Roman- 18
orum a Caledonibus trucidata fuisse narrantur."
Tum Alexander exclamat " Euge, optime ! O si sic 20
omnes ! "

† 21. Et patruus meus " Tune, Alexander " 1
inquit " Pictus es ? " Et ille " Scotus sum " inquit.
Et patruus meus " Sed non Celtica origine es : nam 3
nomen tuum et fratris tui Germanicum est. Picti 4
et Scoti illi qui in Caledoniam migraverunt Celtae
erant." Et ille " Nonne toti insulae nostrae nomen
est Britanniae ? Nonne omnes Britanni sumus ? " 7
Et patruus meus " Ita est " inquit ; "nomen Bri-
tanniae a Britannis oriundum est. Sed nos ipsi ex
multis et diversis nationibus oriundi sumus. Maxi-
ma pars Anglorum et Scotorum hodiernorum Ger-
manica origine sunt." Tum ego " Parentes mei "
inquam " Celtica origine sunt ; nam nomen nostrum
Celticum est." Sed patruus meus " Tu, Antoni, in 14
Africa Meridiana natus es ; itaque Africanus es ! "
Et ego " Africa Meridiana pars imperii Britannici
est ; itaque Britannus sum." Et ille " Ita est "
inquit ; "ubi libertas, ibi patria est." 18

c

[Second Conjugation—Present, Past Imperfect, Future, Active.]

22. Sed iam prope finem ambulationis nostrae
2 eramus, cum Alexander " Ecce, Rutupias video ! "
inquit. Et castellum non procul aberat. Amita
mea et Lydia, quae ante nos adventaverant, cum nos
5 vident, " Salvete ! " inquiunt ; " gaudemus quod
ad tempus adestis. Sed nonne fatigati estis ? " Et
7 patruus meus sic respondet : " Bene nos habemus.
8 Sed nos non pigebit hic paulum sedere et prandio
9 nos recreare. Hinc castellum in oculis habebimus.
10 Videtisne ruinas ? Ut aetas omnia delet ! " Illae
11 rident ; nam revera fatigati eramus. Castellum
Rutupinum, tertio saeculo a Romanis aedificatum,
in promunturio litoris situm est. Hodie procul a
14 mari iacet ; sed temporibus Romanorum totus
campus, qui nunc inter castellum et oram maritimam
iacet, pars maris erat. Post prandium ad castellum
ipsum ambulavimus. Ruinae praeclarae sunt. Pars
murorum lateribus Romanis aedificata est ; sed
19 multis locis deleti sunt. Murus qui ad septentriones
spectat quadringentos quadraginta pedes longus est,
viginti vel triginta pedes altus. Sed quondam
22 maiorem altitudinem habebat ; nam fundamenta
murorum alte sub terra iacent. In angulis murorum
24 fundamenta turrium vides.

[Fourth Declension and Passives of Second Conjugation.]

1 23. Temporibus antiquis portus celeber hic
2 erat, cui nomen erat Portui Rutupino ; naves ex
3 Gallia in Britanniam navigantes ad hunc portum
4 plerumque applicabantur. Nam omnium portuum
Britannicorum hic optimus erat. Castellum in
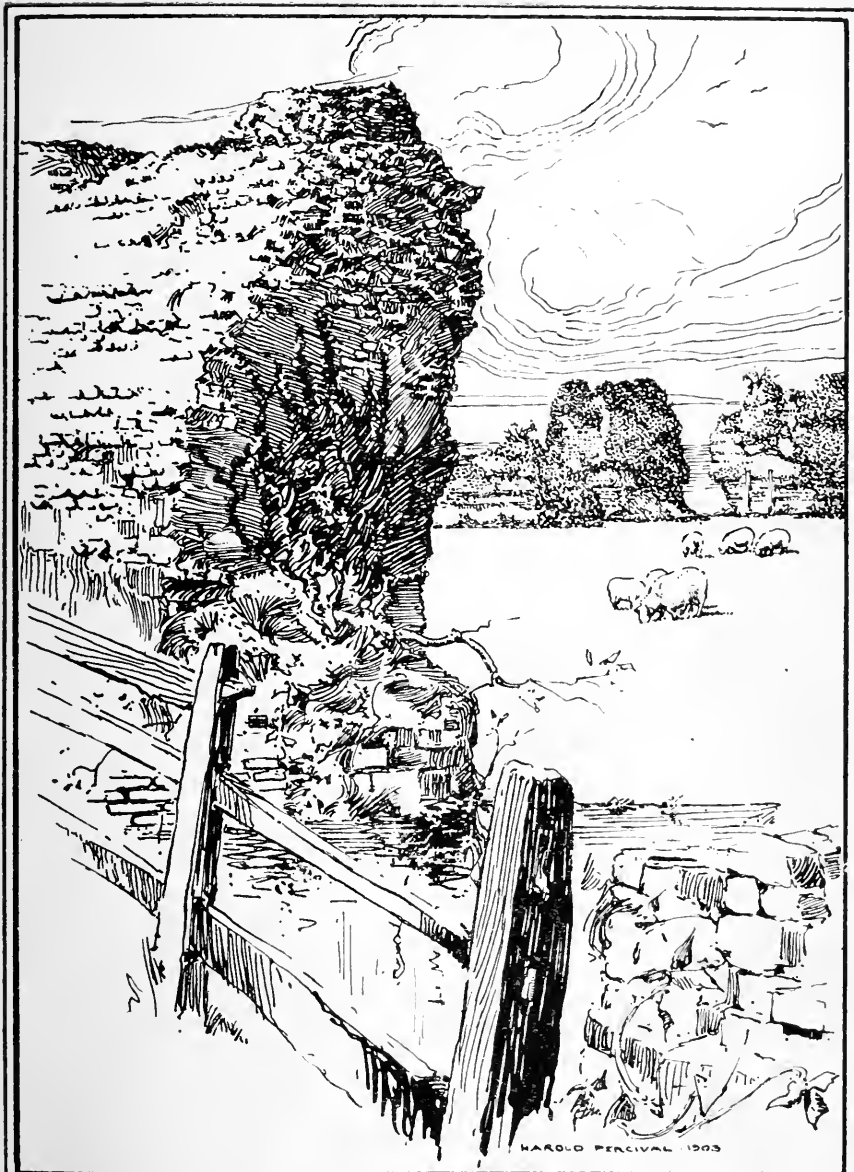
CASTELLVM·RVTVPINVM

6 litore portus stabat. Intra muros castelli est area
lata. In media area fundamentum aedificii antiqui
vides, quod formam crucis habet. Hodie ' Crux
Sancti Augustini ' vocatur, sed temporibus Romanis
fundamentum phari erat, ut custos castelli affirmavit.
Sub hac cruce est aedificium subterraneum, quattuor
12 et quadraginta passus longum ; quod intravimus.
13 Cereos in manu tenebamus, quos custos dederat ;
nam locus obscurus erat. Ab hoc aedificio cuniculus,
in formam quadratam excavatus, sub magnam
16 partem areae pertinet. Dum per cuniculum ambu-
17 lamus, amita mea " Cui erat usui hic cuniculus ? "
inquit. Et custos sic respondet : " Piget me quod
19 de usu cuniculi nihil affirmare possum. Usui fortasse
20 erat, si castellum obsidebatur : ecce puteus altus, ex
21 quo aqua praeberi poterat." Postquam haec spec-
tavimus, iterum circum muros ambulavimus. Dum
23 ad dextrum cornu castelli stamus, patruus meus
nobis reliquias amphitheatri Romani monstravit,
quod non procul aberat. Magna multitudo num-
morum Romanorum in castello servantur ; ex quibus
unum mihi custos venumdedit. Tum custodem
28 valere iubemus, et ad cenam properamus.

IX. Angli et Saxones.

[Second Conjugation—Perfect Stem, Active.]

24. Inter cenam nos pueri " Quis hoc castellum
2 delevit ? " inquimus. Et patruus meus " De for-
3 tuna castelli nihil constat " inquit ; " aetas fortasse
muros delevit. Sed vos mihi respondete. Cuius
5 nomen hic praecipuo honore habetur ? " Aqua
6 haerebat : nihil habuimus respondere. Et amita

mea " Nonne memoria tenetis ? " inquit. Tum
Lydia, quae librum de historia Anglica in manibus
nuper habuerat, " Angli et Saxones " inquit " in 9
hunc angulum Cantii cursum tenuerunt." Et ille 10
" Verum est " inquit ; " nam anno quadringentesimo
quadragesimo nono Hengistus et Horsa ad insulam
Tanatim, quae tum revera insula erat, naves suas 13
applicaverunt. Locus ipse duo tantum vel tria
milia passuum a castello Rutupino iacet." Tum 15
illa " Nonne ab angulo Cantii Angli nomen suum
habuerunt ? " Nos pueri risimus. Sed amita mea 17
" Sic nuper affirmavit vir doctus. Atque nomen
ipsum Cantii nihil aliud significat quam promun-
turium vel angulum." Tum patruus meus " Sed
Tacitus populum Germaniae Inferioris commemorat
qui nomen habebat Anglorum ; pars Sueborum
erant." Et Lydia " Fortasse in angulo Germaniae
habitabant " inquit. Et ille " In paeninsula Cim-
brica revera habitavisse affirmantur ; et duo illa
verba ' angulus ' et ' Cantium ' Germanica sunt." 26

† 25. " Sed de Hengisto et Horsa " inquit
" non cogitabam cum interrogavi. Quis alius vir
clarus hic praecipuo honore habetur ? " Aqua
iterum haesit : nos nihil respondimus. Sed ille
" Abhinc annos duos saecula tredecim fuerant, 5
ex quo Sanctus Augustinus, nuntius verbi divini, 6
cum parva manu ministrorum fidorum huc cursum
tenuit. Nam anno quingentesimo nonagesimo sep-
timo post Christum natum Gregorius Primus, ponti-
fex Romanus, Augustinum notitiam Dei veri in
Anglia docere iusserat. Itaque Augustinus ex Gallia 11
in Britanniam navigavit, et navem suam ad insulam

Tanatim applicavit. Eo tempore Aedilberctus rex
Cantii erat, qui uxorem Christianam, nomine Berc-
tam, habebat, filiam regis Francorum. Itaque rex
16 Christianis benignus fuit, atque Duroverni, in capite
17 regni sui, eis domum praebuit."

1 † 26. Tum amita mea: "Sed antequam rex
Christianis domum praebuit, sermonem cum eis
habuit, dum in clivo gramineo sedebant, unde urbem
Durovernum procul videre poterant. Vel, ut non-
nulli libri historici affirmant, Christiani ad ipsos
muros Castelli Rutupini navem suam applicave-
rant, et per fenestram castelli cum rege sermonem
habuerunt. Nam eo tempore aqua portus Rutupini
usque ad muros castelli pertinebat. Rex Christianis
10 in hunc modum respondisse narratur. *Pulchra sunt
verba et promissa vestra; sed nova sunt et incerta;
nec deos antiquos, quos per multos annos ego et populus
meus adoravimus, oblivioni dare possumus. Sed, quia
ex terra peregrina huc cursum tenuistis, et in animo
habetis ea docere quae vera esse existimatis, non pro-
16 hibebo vos in regno meo manere et notitiam Dei vestri
docere. Itaque domum vobis Duroverni praebebo.* Et
basilicam Sancti Martini eis dedit."

[Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive—how expressed.]

27. Tum nos "Christiani igitur fuerant in
Britannia iam ante adventum Sancti Augustini?"
inquimus. Et ille "Fuerant" inquit; "nam basili-
cae a Christianis Britannicis iam temporibus Romanis
5 aedificatae erant, quarum reliquias vos Dubris
6 vidistis et ego Callevae vidi. Post principatum
Neronis multi Christiani in imperio Romano fuerunt;
nam anno primo et sexagesimo post Christum natum

Sanctus Paulus Romam captivus deportatus est. 9
Et uxor illius Auli Plautii, qui iam aetate principis
Claudii Britanniae praefuit, Christiana fuisse exis-
timatur. Nam 'superstitionis peregrinae' accusata 12
est. Nomen ei fuit Pomponiae Graecinae. Sed 13
Angli et Saxones, qui multos deos adorabant, basili-
cas Christianas plerumque deleverant. Basilica 15
autem Sancti Martini, quae Duroverni erat, non
omnino deleta erat. Durovernum igitur intraverunt 17
nuntii illi verbi divini, crucem argenteam et simu-
lacrum Christi in manibus tenentes, et carmen 19
sacrum cantantes : *Iram tuam ab hac urbe et a domo* 20
tua sancta remove, o Deus; quia peccavimus : alleluia!
Sic-Beda, vir venerabilis, narrat."

[Fifth Declension.]

28. Et amita mea : " Cur non illud in memor-
iam revocas, quod animum pontificis illius Gregorii
misericordia Anglorum commoverat ? Nam multis 3
annis ante in foro Romano quondam fuit, cum 4
pueros nonnullos facie pulchra, oculis caeruleis, 5
capillis flavis vidit. Misericordia commotus est : 6
nam illi pueri servi erant et venumdabantur. Itaque
mercatores, quorum in manu pueri erant, sic inter- 8
rogavit : " Quae est patria eorum ? " inquit. Et
mercatores " Ex Anglia sunt " inquiunt, " cuius
incolae huius faciei sunt." Tum Gregorius "Num 11
Christiani sunt ? " " Non sunt " inquiunt. Et ille
" Heu ! " inquit; " quam pulchra est facies eorum 13
quos Rex Tenebrarum ministros habet ! " Deinde 14
alia interrogavit : " Quid est nomen gentis eorum ? "
inquit. Responderunt eos esse Anglos. Et ille 16
" Recte ! " inquit; " nam angelicam faciem habent : 17

18 non Anglos sed Angelos eos vocari oportet. Sed
quid est nomen illius partis Angliae in qua habita-
bant ? " " Deira vocatur, quae pars Northumbriae
est " inquiunt. Sed ille " Recte ! " inquit; " nam
22 de ira Dei ad fidem revocandi sunt." Postremo
" Quis est rex illius partis Angliae ? " inquit. " Aella
vocatur " inquiunt. Tum " Alleluia ! " inquit ; " nam
25 dies adventat cum carmen omnium carminum
optimum in Anglia cantabitur ! "

1 † 29. Sed finis diei illius belli iam adventabat,
et necesse erat domum properare. Intra semihoram
3 vehiculum paratum erat, et in viam nos dedimus.
Dum in vehiculo sedebamus, muros castelli luna
plena illustratos vidimus. Pulchrum erat specta-
6 culum. Mox domi eramus. Nos pueri longo die
fatigati et semisomni eramus. " Non pigebit vos "
inquit amita mea " ad lectum properare." Ea
9 nocte Marcus et Alexander apud nos manserunt.
Postridie Dubras redambulaverunt.

1 † 30. Hodie iam quinque dies post Idus Sep-
2 tembres elapsi sunt, et dies ille ater appropinquat
qui ultimus feriarum erit. Omnium dierum ille
tristissimus est qui finis est feriarum. Nam triste
5 est verbum ' vale,' cum scholae instant. Intra
paucos dies patruum meum et amitam meam et
7 Lydiam valere iubebo. Quam bellae fuerunt feriae
8 a mane usque ad vesperum ! Quae mutatio rerum
9 instat ! Pauci erunt dies feriati, multi profesti.

10   Ille profestus erit, per quem tria verba silentur :
   Et qui festus erit, mane profestus erat.

12 Nam tribus illis verbis tres res significantur quae
pueris carissimae sunt—pila, follis, trigon.

COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA
AD VENTAM BELGARUM
ANNIS MDCCCXCIX ET MDCCCC.

X. Res Africanae.

[Recapitulation of Verbs.]

† 31. Kalendae sunt hodie Octobres. Apud
magistrum meum iam septem dies sum. Qui, cum 2
me vidit, " Salve " inquit ; " ut vales ? Fueruntne 3
tibi feriae prosperae ? " Et ego " Satis recte "
inquam. Et ille " Ubi fuisti per ferias ? " " In
Cantio fui " inquam " apud patruum meum, qui
te salvere iubet." " Num quid novi " inquit " inter 7
ferias vidisti ? " " Castellum Rutupinum " inquam
" vidi : mecum una fuerunt Marcus et Alexander."
" Recte " inquit ; " num ostreas illic natas gusta- 10
vistis ? " " Nullas gustavimus " inquam ; " sed
cur interrogas ? " " Quia temporibus antiquis
ostreae Rutupinae praeclarae fuerunt " inquit.
Et ego ridens " Piget me " inquam " quod mihi 14
ante hunc diem nihil de re notum fuit." Tum ille 15
" Num pater tuus " inquit " tibi ex Africa Meridiana
litteras nuper dedit ? " " Non dedit " inquam. Et 17
ille " Magna discordia est " inquit " inter Ministrum 18
nostrum qui Coloniis praeest et Patruum Paulum,
ut vocatur, cui cognomen est *Krüger* : is praefectus
est Reipublicae Africanae Batavorum."
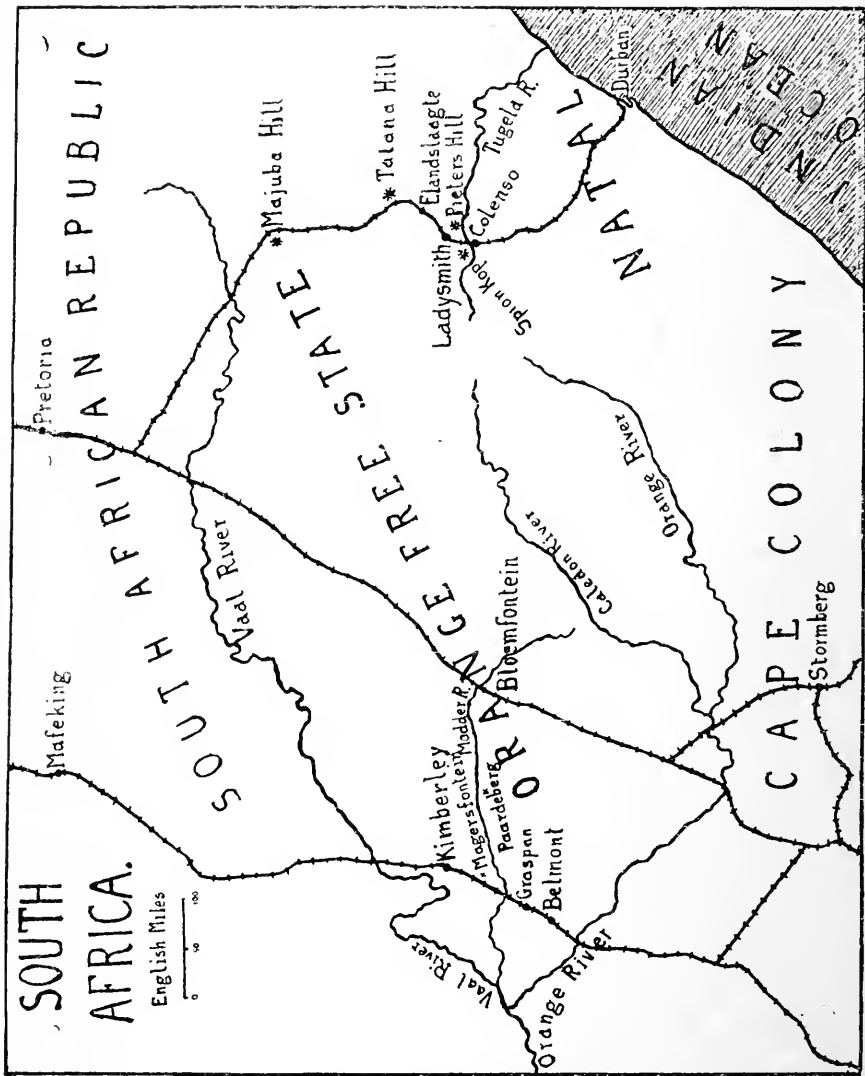
[Third Conjugation—Present, Active and Passive.]

32. Tum ego " Quae est causa, quaeso, dis-cordiae ? " Et ille " Longum est dicere. Sed inter Britannos et colonos Batavos qui regionem trans Vahalem sitam colunt, multae fuerunt causae dis-cordiarum. Nunc de peregrinis, qui Rempublicam Africanam incolunt, disputatur. De hac re litterae a Ministro nostro ad Patruum Paulum et ab hoc ad illum iam per multos menses mittuntur. Sed aquam perdimus : currit hora. Patruus Paulus in hunc modum scribit : ' Peregrinos illos ' inquit ' in civitatem non admitto, quia nimis multi sunt, et quia non boni cives erunt.' Et re vera plures sunt numero quam cives Batavi. ' Tantam multitudi-nem ' inquit ' in qua sunt non solum Britanni sed etiam Americani, Germani, Francogalli, Helvetii, Iudaei, ceteri, in civitatem admittere non possum.' Sed Minister noster sic dicit : ' Oportet eos ad-mitti : nam nos Britanni peregrinos, qui in Coloniam nostram migrant, omnes in civitatem admittimus. Cur igitur Britanni qui in rempublicam vestram migrant in civitatem non admittuntur ? ' Sed Patruus Paulus ' Haec omnia ad Britanniam non pertinent.' inquit : ' Britannos res suas curare oportet.' Difficilis est quaestio. Sed maxima causa irae est quod Batavi peregrinos iniuriis contumeliis-que vexant ; ignavos vocant, quibus usus armorum denegatus est."

XI. Origo Reipublicae Africanae.

[Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]

33. Postridie nos pueri, qui classis quartae

discipuli sumus, magistrum de origine Reipublicae
Africanae Batavorum interrogavimus. "Qui sunt
illi coloni?" inquimus; "quid significat nomen
ipsum *Boer*?" Et ille "Coloni illi Africani" inquit
"originem suam a Batavis Europaeis ducunt.
Nomen *Boer* lingua Batava nihil aliud significat
quam 'agricolam' vel 'colonum.' Caesar 'insulam
Batavorum' in libro quarto Belli Gallici com-
memorat. Ea insula inter Rhenum et Vahalem
11 iacebat: nam Rhenus, ubi in Oceanum influebat,
12 in duo flumina dividebatur, sicut nunc quoque
dividitur, quorum unum Vahalis nominabatur.
Insulae quae inter haec flumina iacebant 'a nation-
15 ibus feris barbarisque' incolebantur, ut Caesar
dicit. Martialis, poeta Romanus, eos homines
17 magnis et robustis membris, capillis flavis vel rufis
18 fuisse dicit. Tacitus Batavos omnium nationum
Germaniae Inferioris fortissimos fuisse dicit; ex
interioribus partibus Germaniae propter discordiam
domesticam migraverant. Insula eorum pars im-
perii Romani erat; sed Batavi acerrimi defensores
libertatis suae fuerunt. Tributum Romanum non
tolerabant."

[Imperative Active of the Third Conjugation.]

1   34. "Itaque, ut Tacitus dicit, 'manebat honor
2 et antiquae societatis insigne.' Vos pueri capita
undetricesimum Germaniae et duodecimum libri
4 quarti Historiarum legite. In usum proeliorum
reservabantur, et in exercitibus Romanis militabant.
Periti erant natandi. Cohors Batavorum, quae in
exercitu Agricolae militabat, quondam trans fretum
in Monam insulam natavit.

† Nos Britanni quoque originem nostram praecipue a populis Germanicis ducimus : nam Angli et Saxones, qui quinto saeculo in Britanniam infundebantur, nationes Germaniae Inferioris erant. Et iam ante tempora C. Iulii Caesaris multi Germani in Britanniam meridianam migraverant : nam Belgas Germanica origine fuisse Caesar dicit, et a Belgis Venta Belgarum nomen suum ducit. Itaque nos Britanni cognati sumus colonorum Batavorum. Origine et nos et illi Germani sumus : animo quoque germanos esse nos oportet. Nam nomen Germanorum nihil aliud significat quam ' fratres.' Multum valet communio sanguinis."

† 35. " Batavi, qui regionem trans Vahalem sitam incolunt, Coloniam nostram Africanam quondam incolebant. Sed abhinc annos quinque et sexaginta magna discordia erat ; et Batavi trans flumen illud Africanum migraverunt, quod ex flumine Europaeo Vahalem nominaverunt, et novam rempublicam sub principatu et patrocinio Britannico condiderunt, cui nomen Reipublicae Africanae dederunt. Ex quo tempore multae discordiae fuerunt inter nos et illos colonos. Abhinc annos duodeviginti bellum fuit, in quo Batavi victoriam a parvo exercitu Britannico in colle Maiuba reportaverunt. Qua ex re magnos sibi spiritus in re militari sumunt. Dicunt se Britannos bello vincere et in mare pellere posse. Haec somnia sunt ; sed periculum est belli domestici. Nam multi ex Batavis qui Coloniam nostram incolunt novis rebus student. Societatem quandam condiderunt cui nomen est Societati Africanae ; cuius consilium est omnes Batavos qui

Africam Meridianam incolunt in unam Rempubli-
cam Batavam consociare. Nobis Britannis necesse
est principatum nostrum totius Africae Meridianae
23 obtinere, et imperium Britannicum, tantis laboribus
24 conditum, defendere."

XII. Initium Belli.

[Third Conjugation—Future, Active and Passive.]

1 36. Magnum periculum belli esse magister noster
2 dicit. " In litteris " inquit "quas praefectus Britan-
nicus nuper ex Terra Natali dedit, Batavi magnas
4 copias conscribere nuntiantur. Nos duodecim tan-
tum milia militum in Terra Natali habemus ; in
6 exercitu Batavorum multo plures sunt. Copias
7 maiores mox mittemus, coloniae defendendae
causa ; sed si Batavi exercitum suum in Terram
9 Natalem ducent, quid prohibebit eos totam coloniam
10 percurrere, dum copiae nostrae in mari erunt ?
Magnum exercitum in India habemus ; sed is ad
12 hoc bellum non mittetur." Sic dicit magister noster.
Sed nos pueri bellum non formidamus. Colonias
14 nostras 'robur et aes triplex' navium longarum
15 Britannicarum defendet. 'Etiam atque etiam
16 pugnabimus et vincemus' ut est in carmine nostro
Anglico. Britannia est domina undarum. Si
bellum erit, pater meus ex Colonia litteras ad me
19 mox mittet, ut spero. Litteras quas scribet ad
20 patruum meum mittam ; nam eas libenter leget.
21 Postea has et alias litteras colligam et in commen-
tarios meos exscribam. En litterarum ipsarum
exemplum !

[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with *s.*]

37. PATRUUS ANTONIO SUO SALUTEM DICIT.

Si vales, bene est ; ego valeo. Ex Africa semper [1]
aliquid novi! Sic dicebant Graeci, et hodie quoque [2]
verum est. Nam Batavi summa audacia ad nos
litteras ultimas miserunt, in quibus bellum nobis [4]
indixerunt, nisi copias nostras, quae in coloniis [5]
nostris Africanis quaeque adhuc in mari sunt, intra
diem deduxerimus. O audaciam singularem Ste- [7]
phani Joannis Pauli, qui praefectus Reipublicae
Africanae est ! Nos nihil respondebimus ; nullas
copias deducemus ; immo maiores mittemus. Quae [10]
est causa tantae audaciae, tantae stultitiae ? Sed
bellum non parvum erit. Batavi sexaginta milia
virorum habebunt. Nam Orangia, cui nomen est [13]
Liberae Civitati, se cum Republica Africana con-
sociavit, et magnam multitudinem virorum ad
bellum promisit. Mirum est quod haec civitas [16]
nobis bellum indixit. Nam nulla causa discordiae
est inter nos et Orangiam. Amita tua tibi multam
salutem dicit. Cura te diligenter. Vale. Die
quinto ante Idus Octobres scripsi. [20]

[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any
suffix.]

38. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM DICIT. *

Si vales, bene est ; ego et mater tua valemus.

▬ 'Africa terribili tremit horrida terra tumultu.' [2]

Num versum illum poetae antiqui legisti ? Hodie [3]
quoque dici potest. Duobus in proeliis hostes vic- [4]

---

* Hae litterae Idibus Novembribus in Angliam redditae sunt.

5 imus, et Terram Natalem, ut poteramus, defendimus.
6 Primam victoriam die tertio decimo ante Kalendas
7 Novembres ad Collem Talanam reportavimus, qui
in angulo Terrae Natalis situs est. Hostes copias
9 suas in collem collegerant ; sed duae cohortes Hi-
10 bernicae et una Anglica impigre procucurrerunt et
11 hostes ex colle pepulerunt. Sed legatus Britanni-
12 cus, graviter vulneratus, post proelium exspiravit.
Postridie alter exercitus Britannicus hostes ad
14 Saltum Cervinum, inter Collem Talanam et Castra
Mariana situm, vicit. Batavi tum quoque in monti-
16 bus stabant ; per totum diem et nostri et hostes for-
17 tissime pugnaverunt ; sub vesperum tres cohortes
Anglorum et Scotorum una cum manu equitum
19 Africanorum levis armaturae montes ascenderunt et
hostes in fugam dederunt. Batavi duo tormenta
21 amiserunt una cum vexillo in quo erat insigne Rei-
publicae Batavae Consociatae. Vale, mi carissime,
23 et scribe mox ad nos. Haec ex Colonia die
24 septimo ante Kalendas Novembres scripsi.

[Third Conjugation—Perfect, Pluperfect, Fut. Perf., Passive.]

39. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM.*

1 S.V.B.E.E.V. Has litteras, mi fili, non libenter
leges. Nam de fortuna mutata dicam. Nostri
post victorias illas, de quibus in prioribus litteris
scripsi, loca obtinere non poterant. Itaque
5 copiae nostrae reductae sunt et circum Castra
6 Mariana collectae ; ubi die tricesimo mensis Octobris
7 proelium ante oppidum commissum est. Quo in
proelio nostri laboraverunt. Sed opportune accidit

---

* Litterae die tertio et vicesimo mensis Novembris redditae.

quod nonnulla tormenta navalia, quae classiarii
nostri in ipso tempore apportaverant, nostris 10
auxilio fuerunt.   Post proelium autem magnum in- 11
commodum nuntiatum est.   Nam proxima nocte
duae cohortes nostrorum in collem, qui ad sep- 13
tentriones situs est, missae erant, loci occupandi 14
causa.   Sed in itinere mulis, qui tormenta nostra
trahebant, terror subito incidit, et omnes velut
furore acti in fugam se dederunt, arma virosque in 17
tenebris praecipitantes.   Postridie mane nostri se
in loco iniquo esse viderunt : ab hostibus undique 19
circumdati erant.   Fortiter sed frustra se de- 20
fenderunt, et tandem coacti sunt se dedere.   Haec 21
Nonis Novembribus scripsi.   22

XIII. Milites Reginae.

[Fourth Conjugation—Present, Active and Passive.]

40. Hodie dies est tertius mensis Novembris.
Nos pueri multa de bello audimus.   Veniunt fere 2
cotidie litterae ab amicis nostris, quae magno
studio leguntur et custodiuntur.   Magnopere nos 4
delectat de ' Militibus Reginae ' audire et cantare. 5
Hodie magister noster, postquam in scholam venit 6
" Audite, pueri," inquit " quod in actis diurnis 7
legi. Batāvi copias nostras circumdederunt. 8
Castra Mariana duodecim milia nostrorum cus- 9
todiunt. Sed non facile erit oppidum munire.   In
campo iacet, quem colles undique circumdant.
In collibus Batavi tormenta sua magna posuerunt, 12
unde missilia omnis generis in oppidum effundere
poterunt. Numero nostros multum superant.
Sed quinquaginta milia virorum in Africam
Meridianam nuper emisimus."

[Fourth Conjugation—Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

41. " Sed cur non multo ante " inquit " bellum paravimus ? Nam proverbium est ' in pace
3 bellum para.' Crebri nuntii de periculo belli venie-
4 bant. Batavos enim bellum per multos annos
5 parare audiebamus : urbes suas muniebant, milites ex omnibus partibus Europae conscribebant. Sed
7 nos nihil paravimus. Nesciebamus enim periculum verum esse. Nunc scimus : sed num sero scimus ? Magnum exercitum nuper emisimus : sed quando
10 in Africam Meridianam adveniet ? Num ante ad- ventum exercitus nostri de aliis victoriis Batavorum
12 audiemus ? Quis Terram Natalem a Batavis
13 custodiet, dum exercitus noster in mari erit ? Nam sex milia milium passuum sunt inter nos et Pro- munturium Spei Bonae. Hostibus autem tota
16 regio ubi pugnabitur, omnia vada omnium flu- minum nota sunt."

[Fourth Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

42. Hodie, qui est dies decimus mensis Novem- bris, de adventu in Africam Meridianam unius ex magnis illis navibus, quae ' Castella ' nominantur,
4 audivimus. A portu nostro Anglico ad Promun- turium Spei Bonae intra viginti dies navigaverat.
6 Heri advenit, et statim ad Portum Natalem missa est, quo intra paucos dies perveniet. Sed Castra Mariana ducenta fere milia passuum a Portu Natali distant. In illa autem navi est una cohors
10 eorum qui patriam vocantem audiverunt. Imperator
11 noster, cui cognomen est *Buller*, pridie Kalendas

Novembres advenerat. Interea nostri Castra
Mariana fortiter custodiverunt. Ea loca quae muniri 13
poterant muniverunt. Opportune vero accidit quod 14
tormenta illa navalia, quae ad proelium ante
oppidum commissum in ipso tempore advenerunt, 16
nunc in oppido sunt.
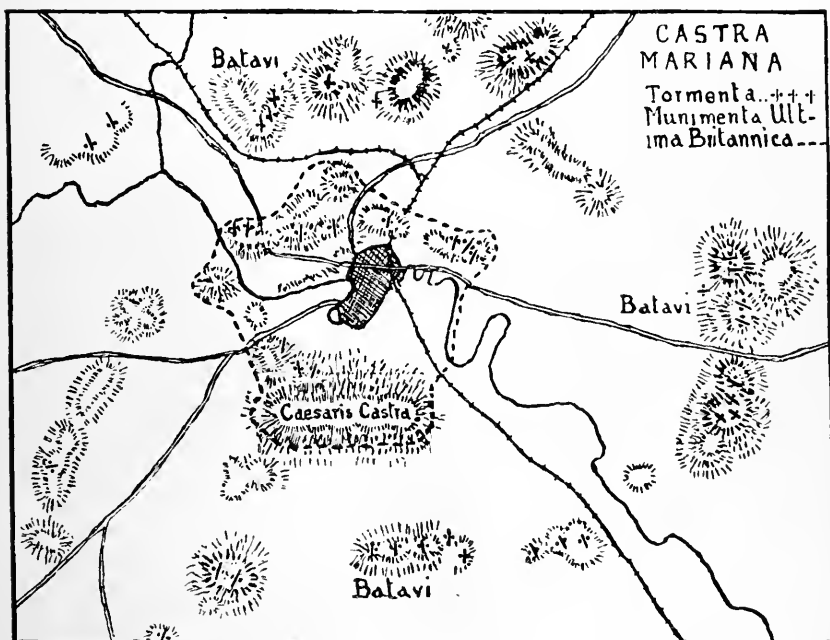
XIV. Tria Oppida Obsessa.

[Verbs in *io* with Infinitive in *ere*—Present, Past Imperfect
and Future, Active and Passive.]

43. MATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM.
S.V.B.E. Nos valemus. Has litteras, quas
Nonis Decembribus scribebam, tu, mi Antoni, non
ante ferias Natales accipies : et omnia quae scribere 3

poteram, iam ante adventum litterarum mearum
5 audiveris. Sed pauca verba ad te mittere cupiebam.
6 Cur tam diu nihil litterarum a te ? Ut vales ? Quid
tu et condiscipuli tui, Marcus et Alexander, inter
8 ferias facietis ? Mox a te litteras accipiemus, ut
9 spero. Nos magnum dolorem ex bello capimus.
Batavi Castra Mariana iam plus quam triginta dies
11 obsident. Oppidum capere magnopere cupiunt,
12 et fortasse capient. Noctes diesque missilia omnis
13 generis in oppidum iaciunt, et impetus in nostros
14 faciunt. Nostri autem quid facere possunt ? Deficit
cibus, deficit aqua. Vix somnum capere possunt.
16 Necesse est eis cuniculos et puteos in terra fodere.
17 Eo se recipiunt si tormenta Batavorum audiuntur ;
18 sed pauci tormentis interficiuntur. Sic litterae,
quae per columbas mittuntur, nuntiant. Et duo
alia oppida Britannica, Adamantopolis et Statio
Bechuanarum, a Batavis obsidentur. Tu vero
mox rescribe. Etiam atque etiam vale.

XV. Victoriae et Clades Britannicae.

[Verbs in *io* with Infinitive in *ere*—Perfect Stems.]

1 44. *Idibus Decembribus scriptum.* Intra hos
viginti dies de tribus victoriis atque duabus
3 cladibus Britannicis nuntium accepimus. Exer-
citus Britannicus, in quo octo milia virorum erant,
per fines Orangiae iter faciebat, Adamantopolim
obsidione liberandi causa. Via per campos latos
et apertos ducebat ; sed nonnullis in locis tumuli
8 erant, quos necesse erat superare. Hos Batavi,
9 velut aquilae nidos suos, insederant, et viam
custodiebant. Sed nostri impetus in eos fortissime

fecerunt, tumulos ceperunt, hostes in fugam con- 11
iecerunt. Quibus in proeliis, ad Montem Bellum et 12
Lacum Gramineum pugnatis, Custodes Regales et
classiarii nostri praecipuam laudem reportaverunt.
Inde iter ad Flumen Turbulentum inceperunt. 15
Dux autem Batavus, cui nomen est *Cronje*, in ripis
fluminis magnas fossas puteosque foderat, in 17
quibus copias suas et tormenta occultaverat. Ibi
per totum diem acerrime pugnatum est. Batavi 19
circiter quingentos ex nostris interfecerunt vel 20
vulneraverunt. Tandem nostri impetum in sinis-
tram partem fluminis fecerunt, et se traiecerunt. 22
Tum Batavi se ex proelio receperunt. 23

† 45. Haec victoria die duodetricesimo mensis No-
vembris reportata est. De qua patruus meus mihi
haec scripsit :—" Victoria nostris non magno usui
erat, quia hostibus instare non poterant. Nam
legatus Britannicus nullos equites habebat. Pedi- 5
tes nostri ad huiusmodi bellum minus apti sunt.
Batavis, sicut Britannis antiquis, non mos est iusto 7
proelio pugnare. Equites eorum arma peditum por-
tant et pedibus pugnare possunt. Itaque mobili- 9
tatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis prae- 10
stant."—Exercitus noster iam viginti tantum milia 11
passuum ab oppido obsesso aberat. Sed inter castra
nostra et Adamantopolim mons erat, Macrifontium
nomine, quem necesse erat superare. Legatus nos-
ter quattuor cohortes Caledonum praemisit, loci
occupandi causa. Sed Batavus suos in fossis, quas 16
ante montem foderat, in insidiis posuerat. De magna
clade Britannica accepta in actis diurnis haec legi. 18

† 46. "Silentio noctis per tenebras et imbrem
Caledones agmine quadrato ad locum iter faciunt.
Subito aër ignibus tonitruque tremit; hostis autem
nusquam conspicitur. Sed ex omnibus fossis imber
mortifer missilium in ordines nostros effunditur,
et puncto temporis ducenti vel trecenti ex viris
illis fortissimis una cum legato mortui vel vulnerati
iacuerunt. Nostri in insidias inciderant. In tenebris
autem nullus erat usus oculorum ; nec imperia in
tanto tumultu audiri vel accipi poterant. Ordines
igitur nostri perturbati et confusi sunt ; arma virique,
alius super alium, praecipitabantur : non proelium
sed trucidatio fuit. Nostri ex loco mortifero, ut
poterant, se receperunt, vel viam per medios hostes
facere contenderunt. Plus quam septingentos viros
ex quattuor illis cohortibus amisimus." Haec
clades mane diei undecimi mensis Decembris
accepta est. Pridie alia clades Britannica ex Colonia
nuntiata erat.   Alius exercitus Britannicus ad
Montem Procellarum in insidias inciderat, et victus
erat.   Nihil eorum quae apud nos agebantur hosti-
bus ignotum erat.   Nam exploratores omnia
indicaverant.

† 47. Feriae Natales adventant. Intra tres dies
apud patruum meum ero. Dulce domum ! Sed feriae
non hilarae erunt. Nam de tertia clade, in Terra
Natali accepta, acta diurna haec nuntiant :—" Mag-
nus ille exercitus Britannicus, cui imperator noster
praeest, plus quam viginti milia virorum numero,
Castra Mariana obsidione liberare contendebat. Inter
nostros et oppidum fluebat Tugela, quem Batavi oc-

cupaverant et in ripis fossas suas mortiferas foderant.
Mane diei quinti decimi mensis Decembris imperator
noster quattuor legiones suas ad proelium eduxit.
Caelum caeruleum et serenum erat ; magnus calor
solis. Legio Hibernica, quae in sinistro cornu erat, ad 13
ripas fluminis fortissime appropinquavit ; sed post-
quam quingentos vel sescentos viros amiserunt, se
recipere coacti sunt.   In dextro cornu tormenta
nostra defensoribus nudata sunt ; quorum decem
ab hostibus capta sunt, postquam ei qui tormentis
ministrabant paene omnes interfecti sunt. Sed
duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum e loco 20
mortifero recepit. Facinus pulcherrimum fuit. In
ea manu fuit adulescens egregiae spei, nomine
Roberts." Fuit : nam is quoque, graviter vulneratus,
postero die exspiravit. In eo proelio mille ducen-
tos viros amisimus.
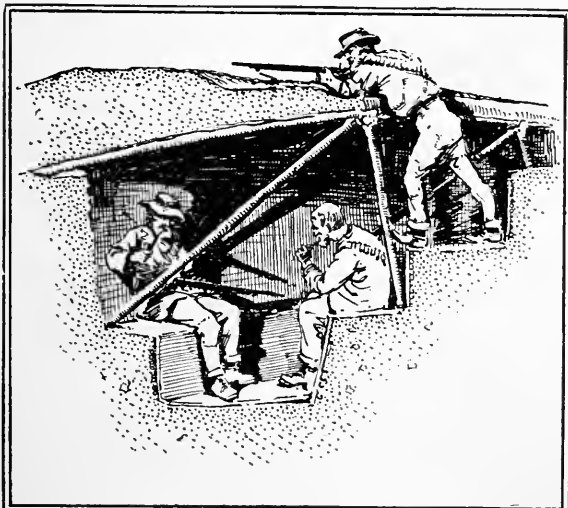
FOSSA·BATAVORVM

XVI. Foedus nominis Britannici.

[Present Injunctive of *sum.*]

1   48. Hodie Dies Natalis est Christi. Ante paucos dies novus imperator Britannicus ad Promunturium Spei Bonae navigavit. De quo patruus meus haec dixit :—" In hoc viro summa est scientia belli, clarissima virtus, egregia fortuna. Magnum sibi quondam nomen in India fecit ; nunc senex est, 7 septem et sexaginta annos natus. Et pater est 8 illius adulescentis qui ad Tugelam cecidit dum 9 facinus pulchrum et periculosum facit. Pater mortem filii sui deplorat ; sed patriam ipsam vo-11 cantem audivit. Sit ei iter prosperum ! Sit in illo nomine Spei Bonae omen rerum prosperarum ! 13 Nam nomen est omen, ut poeta Romanus dixit. 14 Quondam Promunturium Procellarum vocabatur. Exercitui maximo ducentorum milium virorum praeerit. Numquam post hominum memoriam tantus exercitus trans mare transportatus est, 18 quantum nunc emisimus. Quod reipublicae nostrae prosit ! "

[Present Injunctive of First Conjugation.]

   49. Postridie patruus meus haec ex actis diurnis 2 recitavit :—" Ex Africa Meridiana nihil novi. Sed 3 magnitudo populi Britannici prope admirabilior in rebus adversis quam in prosperis fuit. Opus magni laboris erit, tot atque tam validos hostes vincere. 6 Sed etiam atque etiam pugnemus, donec vicerimus. 7 Deus nobis fortunam det ! Ne desperemus ! 8 Festinemus lente, sicut Fabius ille Maximus fecit, 9 de quo poeta Romanus haec scripsit :

Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem.   10

Hoc bellum Britanniam, matrem tot filiarum egregiarum, cum coloniis suis in unius et maioris 12 populi corpus consociavit.

Una dum Regina nostra est, unus in Reginam amor,   14
Unum foedus omnis esto nominis Britannici !   15

Sic una voce exclamat Maior illa Britannia, cui sol numquam occidit.   Coloniae autem nostrae 17 liberae maximam sibi laudem esse iudicant, dicere 18 posse :

Filia matris in domo,   20
Domina sum tamen domi.

Tu, Canada, duo milia filiorum tuorum misisti. 22 Vos, Coloniae Australienses, cum Nova Zelanda et Tasmania octo milia misistis.   Tu, Terra Natalis, quae filia Britanniae natu minima es, quinque 25 milia dedisti.   Quam vera sunt verba Horatii! 26

Caelum non animum mutant qui trans mare currunt.   27

Et in Britannia ipsa magna multitudo voluntariorum nomina sua dederunt.   Deus salvam praestet 29 Reginam ! ”

XVII.   Post tenebras lux.

[Present Subjunctive of *sum* and First Conjugation.]

50. Initium est novi anni.   Batavos piget Castra Mariana iam duos menses obsidere ; nostros quoque obsideri piget.   Hostes igitur operam dant ut oppidum vi expugnent, et diem constituunt quo 4 impetum in Caesaris Castra dent, quae ad meridiem 5 oppidi iacent.   De qua re patruus meus haec

recitavit :—" Silentio noctis pedibusque nudis collem ascendere incipiunt. Sed Mancunienses nostri ad arma volant. Ad decimam horam diei
10 pugnatur, quo tempore tantus imber cadit, ut sol
11 nebulis obscuretur. Tum impetum tam acrem in
12 Batavos faciunt ut eos propulsent et castra salva
13 praestent. Pulcherrimum erat facinus. Sed in oppido summa inopia est, ut litterae, quae per columbas mittuntur, nuntiant. Cibus carissimus est ; nulli iam boves, nullae oves, nulli porci in
17 oppido sunt. Carne equina victitant. Multi
18 homines aegrotant ; sed ubi nullae vaccae sunt, lac
19 deest. Gallinae denariis viginti constant, duodecim ova triginta denariis, cetera grandi pretio. Navis aëria nonnumquam ex oppido emittitur, ut
22 quae apud hostes aguntur explorentur. Ex qua

NAVIS · AERIA

nostri feminas Batavas cum festo ornatu nonnumquam vident, quae via ferrata apportantur, ut obsidionem spectent." Navis aëria ita facta est 25 ut ad terram applicetur, si necesse sit. Nam cum 26 aëre plena est, in caelum ascendit ; cum aër emittitur, descendit.

XVIII. Adamantopolis obsidione liberata.

† 51. *Die septimo decimo mensis Februarii scriptum.*
Magnum hodie gaudium per totam Britanniam est. Nam Adamantopolis obsidione liberata est ! Imperator novus vincere scit. Initio mensis 3 Februarii Caledones emittit, qui ab oriente im- 4 petum in Batavos dent ; interea quinque milibus 5 equitum Anglorum et Australiensium imperat, ut 6 ab occidente ad oppidum obsessum equitent. 7 Itaque, dum Batavus cum Caledonibus proelium committit, equites noctu iter incipiunt. Per tres dies calorem solis et pulverem tolerant ; multi viri et equi calore et labore interficiuntur. Tandem die quinto decimo mensis Februarii incolae oppidi pulverem solito densiorem in campis latis et apertis 13 conspiciunt. Equites ad oppidum appropinquant. 14 Sed vestimenta eorum incolis oppidi ignota erant. Itaque ei qui in statione ante oppidum erant " Salvi sitis ! " inquiunt ; " sed qui estis ? unde 17 venitis ? " Et equites " Ex Australia venimus " inquiunt " ut oppidum vestrum obsidione liber- 19 emus . " ' Deo sit gratia " inquiunt illi ; " nam 20 obsidionem iam per tres menses toleravimus."— Omen est in illo nomine Adamantopolis. Nam 22 ' adamanta movere ' proverbium est. 23

[Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of other Conjugations.]

52. AMITA ANTONIO SUO MULTAM SALUTEM DICIT.

S.V.B.E.E.V.   Litterae tuae me magnopere
2 delectaverunt.   De Adamantopoli obsidione liberata
nos quoque gaudio triumphamus.   In imperatore
4 nulla est mora.   Num acta diurna legis ?   Noster
5 quinque et viginti milia virorum emisit, qui Bata-
6 vum a meridiana parte oppugnent, dum equites illi
qui Adamantopolim obsidione liberaverunt eum a
8 septentrionibus itinere prohibeant.   Sed videat
9 imperator noster ne quid detrimenti respublica
10 capiat !   Animo anxia sum.   Nam dies ille Maiu-
bensis appropinquat, quo abhinc annos undeviginti
coloni illi Batavi exercitum Britannicum vicerunt.
Dies erat septimus et vicesimus mensis Februarii.
14 Deus omen avertat !   Deus prohibeat ne hic dies
15 nobis iterum ater sit !   Det ut hoc anno nos
16 hostes vincamus !   Patruus tuus rogat ut tibi suis
17 verbis salutem dicam.   Tu cura ut valeas.   Haec
ego die vicesimo mensis Februarii scripsi.

XIX. Dies Maiubensis.

[Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum*.]

53. Kalendae sunt hodie Martiae. Victoria per
totum imperium Britannicum conclamatur !   Nam
duas magnas victorias a Batavis reportavimus.
4 In finibus Orangiae noster venit, vidit, vicit.   Bata-
vus castra sua ad Montem Equinum moverat, ubi in
ripis Fluminis Turbulenti fossas cuniculosque more
7 suo foderat, in quibus sui tuti essent.   Ibi noster
8 eum velut indagine circumdedit, ne evadere posset.

MONS EQUINUS
Fossae Batavorum...■
Fossae Britannorum. ∞
Milia Passuum

Castra Batavorum

Canadenses

Castra Britannica

Flumen Turbulentum
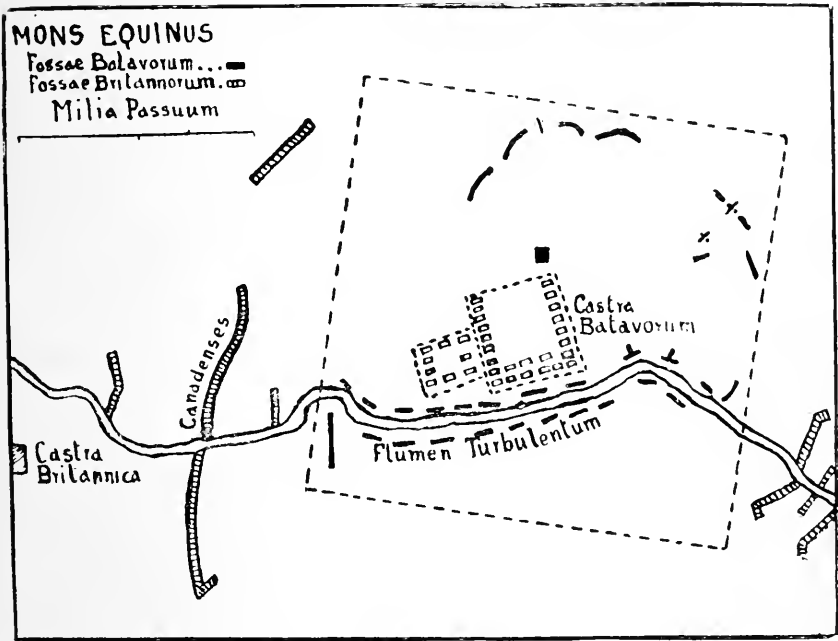
Batavi se per decem dies fortissime defenderunt, sed frustra. Nostri quoque fossas contra fossas Batavorum foderunt ; has ita cotidie propius moverunt, 11 ut tandem septingentos tantum passus a fossis Batavorum abessent. Postremo duae centuriae Canadensium noctu etiam propius appropinquaverunt, et ibi novas fossas foderunt. Tum Batavus salutem 15 desperavit, et postridie se cum toto exercitu suo dedidit. Dies erat Maiubensis. Quattuor milia 17 captivorum in Coloniam missi sunt. Regina nostra 18 populo Canadensi litteras misit, in quibus admirationem tantae virtutis significat, et mortem tot virorum fortium deplorat. De imperatore nostro Marcus hunc versum scripsit :

Unus homo nobis properando restituit rem. 23

[Past Imperfect Subjunctive of First, Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations.]

54. Altera victoria eius diei in Terra Natali
reportata est, ubi Fabius ille noster operam
dabat ut Castra Mariana obsidione liberaret. Bis
iam flumen Tugelam traiecerat, ut hostes loco mov-
eret et viam ad oppidum obsessum faceret. Sed bis
coactus erat ut suos reduceret. De quibus ex-
peditionibus patruus meus ad me haec scripsit :—
" Via trans montes tam altos et difficiles ducebat,
ut pauci multos itinere facile prohiberent. Sed
nostri per tres menses tantam virtutem prae-
stiterunt, ut calorem, pruinam, imbrem, inopiam,
vulnera, mortem aequo atque hilaro animo toler-
arent, montes altissimos ascenderent, loca iniquis-
sima caperent, omnem vim et impetum belli sus-
tinerent. Haec facilia ex difficillimis magnitudo
animi reddidit ; ut omnes homines de tanta forti-
tudine cum admiratione audirent, iudicarentque
nullos milites umquam fortius sanguinem suum
pro patria profudisse. Et quamquam ter frustra
contenderant, ut hostes ex illis montibus pellerent,
tamen audacia vere Britannica constituerunt ut
etiam atque etiam pugnarent, donec vincerent."

† 55. Et vicerunt. Nam postquam die altero
et vicesimo mensis Februarii legio Hibernica flumen
ab oriente traiecit, ut collem Petreium, in quo
Batavi stabant, caperet, die septimo et vicesimo
totus exercitus Britannicus traiecit et cum Batavis
proelium commisit. Tam acriter pugnatum est ut
ex nostris mille sescenti viri amitterentur. Tandem

sub noctem colles illos omnes cepimus et hostes in fugam coniecimus. Postero die manus equitum Britannicorum in oppidum, iam quattuor menses obsessum, equitavit. Magnum erat gaudium et obsessorum et eorum qui oppidum obsidione liberaverant. Et maius fortasse est gaudium totius imperii Britannici. O diem pulchrum, quo 14 per virtutem militum nostrorum et oppido illi obsesso et patriae nova lux affulsit! Nobis pueris 16 propter duas illas victorias dies feriatus datus est, quo scholis liberi essemus. Noctu schola nostra 18 ignibus festis illustrata est; et magistri et pueri insignia triumphalia in memoriam Montis Equini et Castrorum Marianorum fabricata gerebant. 21

XX. Pax Britannica.

† 56. PATER FILIO SUO CARISSIMO SALUTEM.

Hodie, mi fili, tibi longas litteras scribere in animo habeo. Plus quam tres menses sunt ex quo 2 exercitus Batavus ad Montem Equinum captus est, et copiae nostrae victrices Florifontium, caput Orangiae, intraverunt. Nunc vexillum Britannicum Praetoriae, in ipso capite Reipublicae 6 Africanae, salutavimus. Vos, qui in Britannia 7 habitatis, gaudere scio. Sed quanto gaudio nos, 8 qui per tot annos hunc diem exspectavimus, triumphare putatis? Narrabo tibi: abhinc annos undeviginti, post cladem illam Maiubensem, Britanni, qui Praetoriae habitabant, vexillum Britannicum velut mortuum humaverunt. In monumento inscriptum est 'In memoriam vexilli Britannici carissimi, quod anno millesimo octin-

gentesimo octogesimo primo vita decessit, quattuor annos natum. Resurgam.' Resurrexit. Hodie omnia plena sunt laetitiae. Statio illa Bechuanarum, quae per septem menses obsidionem tanta fortitudine, animo tam hilaro sus-
21 tinuerat, obsidione liberata est. Tibi, dux fortissime, qui oppidum prospere defendisti, gratias
23 agimus maximas. Bene vertat, quod agas! Floreat Domus Carthusiana, in qua educatus es! Sed eos quoque memoria teneamus, qui pro
26 patria pugnantes vitam exspiraverunt. Solum Africanum Britanniae et coloniarum Britannicarum commune sepulchrum est. Monumentum in memoriam filii imperatoris nostri ad Tugelam factum nuper vidi : in quo haec verba sunt—

In Memoriam
FREDERICI HUGONIS SHERSTON ROBERTS
QUI DIE XVIII ANTE KAL. IAN. A. S. MDCCCXCIX VULNUS MORTI-
FERUM ACCEPIT
35 DUM FACINUS EGREGIUM ET AUDAX FACIT
PROPTER QUOD CRUCIS VICTORIANAE DECUS MERUIT.
37 AD TUGELAM POSTRIDIE EXSPIRAVIT.

Vita eius brevis sed non imperfecta fuit. Nam
39 quid pulchrius est quam pro patria pugnantem vitam exspirare ? Tu, mi fili, exemplum tantae virtutis memoria tene. Ab his et huiusmodi viris

imperium Britannicum conditum est et con-
servabitur. Floreat Etona, ubi adulescens ille
fortissimus educatus est !

Quid est imperium Britannicum ? Societas
populorum et nationum, quae communione bene-
ficiorum officiorumque continetur. Bella enim pro
sociis coloniisque sumuntur et geruntur ; coloniae
pro Britannia, communi omnium Britannorum
parente, sanguinem suum profundere paratae sunt.
Nam principatus Britannicus imperium et liber-
tatem, res quondam inter se contrarias, consociat.
Itaque illud patrocinium orbis terrarum verius 53
quam imperium nominari oportet. Videamus, mi 54
fili, ne, ut maioribus nostris pulcherrimum fuit 55
tantam nobis gloriam imperii tradere, sic nobis 56
turpissimum sit id quod accepimus obtinere et 57
conservare non posse. Illud vero imperii nostri 58
firmissimum fundamentum est quod victos in 59
civitatem admittere possumus. Ianua nostra
omnibus aperta est. Batavis, igitur, sicut aliis 61
populis victis, civibus Britannicis esse licet. Ex 62
hostibus socii aliquando fuerint, ut speramus ; quo
tempore hanc sibi quisque maximam laudem
iudicabit, ut de se dicere possit 'Civis Britannicus 65
sum,' et de Britannia—

Fecisti patriam diversis gentibus unam !   67

Nam quae Claudianus, poeta Romanus, de urbe 68
Roma scripsit, ea etiam verius de Britannia dicere
licet :—

E

70   Haec est, in gremium victos quae sola recepit,
     Humanumque genus communi nomine fovit,
     Matris non dominae ritu; civesque vocavit
73   Quos domuit, nexuque pio longinqua revinxit.
74   Huius pacificis debemus moribus omnes
75   Quod cuncti gens una sumus.

76   Nos, igitur, hodie, sicut olim Camillus ille
Romanus, templum Concordiae consecremus, in
78 quo haec verba inscribantur : PACI ET LIBERTATI
RESTITUTAE.

80   Bellavimus ; esto.
          Sed cecidere odia, et tristes mors obruit iras.

Tu vero, fili mi carissime, bene vale, et me
ama. Scripsi Nonis Iuniis, Anno Salutis MDCCCC.
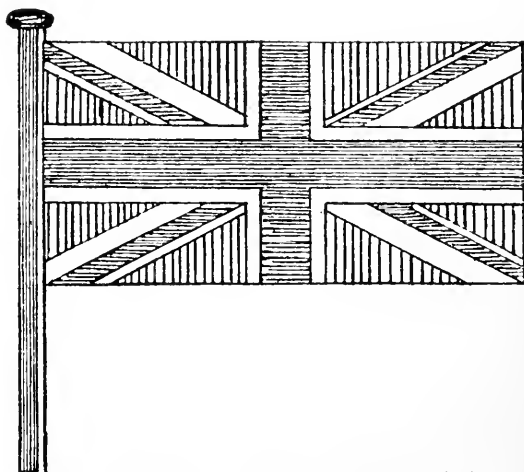
VEXILLUM BRITANNICUM.

PREPARATIONS.

Note to the Teacher.—The following " Preparations " are not intended to do the work of a vocabulary : they are of the nature of outline lessons on grammatical points, and therefore contain only (1) words presenting some new grammatical feature not previously studied, (2) constructions or phrases which call for special notice. In this respect these Preparations differ from those given in *Ora Maritima*. The pupil is now supposed to be capable of looking out unknown words in the Alphabetical Vocabulary (pp. 149-175).

In connexion with each new grammatical feature introduced, the necessary grammatical rules and tables are given ; so that the pupil using this book has no need of a separate grammar.

The amount of grammar assumed as known at the start is that contained in *Ora Maritima*, viz., the first three Declensions of Nouns, Adjectives of similar formation (except those in —, *is*, *e* of the 3rd Declension), all the tenses of the Indicative Active of the 1st Conjugation and of the verb *sum*, and a few isolated forms of Pronouns (*me, mihi ; te, tibi ; se, sibi ; nos, nobis ; vos, vobis*).

On the Pronunciation of Words.—If the last syllable but one of a word of ˌmore than two syllables is *long*, it is also accented (thus : *remōtus*) ; if *short*, the accent is thrown back on to the last syllable but two (thus : *rémŏvet, rémŏvē*). Words of only two, syllables are always accented´on the first of the two (thus : *vīrēs, vírum*). Very few Latin words are accented on the last syllable. The only one that occurs in this book is *adhúc*. This and similar words have lost aˌsyllable, which explains the accentuation : *adhūc* stands for *adhū-ce*.

Syllables ending in two or more consonants are mostly long, as in ap*ert*a, fen*est*ra ; so too are syllables containing a double vowel, as in n*au*tae. But many syllables ending in a single consonant and containing a single vowel are also long, because the vowel is itself a *long vowel* : **all such long vowels are marked in the following Preparations.** Thus *beata* and *antiqua* have the middle vowel long, and will therefore be marked *beāta, antīqua :* and it is because the middle syllable in each of these words has a long vowel in it that it is accented (*beáta, antíqua*). Vowels which do not bear any mark in the following Preparations may be regarded as short, as in *domina, amita, casa, quoque, mea, tua* (accented *dómina, ámita, cása, quóque, méa, túa*).

1. ☞ The words printed black are the grammatically important words—here Adjectives of the 3rd Decl. in —, is, e.

1. **Septembrēs,** · 'September,' an Adjective agreeing with *Kalendae* and meaning 'seventh' or 'belonging-to-the-seventh month.' The Roman year originally began with March; hence September was then the seventh month. The literal translation of this sentence is 'To-day there are the September Calends,' =' to-day is the 1st of September.'

3. *mensis* **Septembris,** 'of the September month '='of the month of S.'

7. **celebris,** 'celebrated,' agreeing with *ducis.* *Ducis* is Genitive, because it depends on *dē vītā,* just as *Agricolae* does; the meaning is 'about the life of Agricola, the life of the celebrated general.' A Noun standing in the same construction as another Noun to which it is adjectival is said to be 'in apposition' to it: thus *ducis* is here in apposition to *Agricolae.* But in English we should say,' about the life of Agricola, the celebrated general,' without a second 'of.'

11. **alacrī,** 'eager,' agreeing with *animō.* The Abl. without a Preposition here means 'with,' as in *magnā audāciā pugnābant;* see O.M.* p. 143.

It will be seen that Adjectives like **September, October, November, December, celeber, alacer** differ from Adjectives like *fortis* in having a separate form for the Masculine Nominative Singular. This case is formed **without the ending -is,** and therefore resembles a Noun like **imber,** *rain* (stem imbr-).

<div align="center">

celeber, celebris, celebre, *celebrated.*

</div>

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	celeber	celebris	celebre	celebrēs	celebria
Acc.	celebrem		celebre	celebrēs	celebria
Gen.	celebris			celebrium	
Dat. } *Abl.* }	celebrī			celebribus	

<div align="center">

2. [is, ea, id, Singular Number.]

</div>

1. *post-quam,* lit. 'after than ' or 'later than ' =' after the time when ' or simply 'when,' or 'after.' But it must be distinguished from the Preposition *post,* 'after '; cp. *post prandium,* p. 3.

---

* The letters O.M. stand for *Ora Maritima* throughout these Preparations.

2. *pedestrēs* and *equestrēs*, from adjectives in —, *is, e*.

8. **id,** ' that-thing,' ' that.'   **ei,** ' for that man,' ' for him.'

9. *nōn rēvērā dēbellāverat*.   The so-called ' Conquest of Britain ' by Julius Caesar ought rather to be called ' The failure of Caesar to conquer Britain.'   Britain was not conquered till nearly 100 years later.

10. **ēius,** ' of that-man,' ' of him,' ' his.'   **eum,** ' that-man,' ' him,' Accusative Case ; *reportāv-isse*, Infinitive formed from the Perfect tense *reportāv-ī* (the Perfect of *reportō*, 1st Conj.) ; the literal translation is ' Tacitus declares him not to have won a great victory.'   This construction of the **Accusative with the Infinitive** (*eum reportāvisse*) depending on a verb of ' declaring ' or ' thinking ' is found in English as well as in Latin ; but English generally prefers to use ' that ' followed by a Nominative and a Verb : thus, ' Tacitus affirms (*or* says) that he did not win a great victory.'   Cp. O.M. § 36, *Britanniam esse insulam iūdicābant*, ' they judged Britain to be an island.'

14. *virī animō fortī*, ' men with brave mind ' =' men of brave mind ' ; cp. O.M. § 43, *virī membrīs rōbustīs, flāvīs capillīs, oculīs caeruleīs*.   The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes a quality of the person spoken of, and may therefore be called an **Ablative of Quality** or **Adjectival Ablative**.

16. *C.* here stands for *Gāī* (as though it were a *G*).—The coin of Caesar here shown has a head of Venus on one side and on the other the figure of Aeneas carrying Anchises from Troy. Caesar traced his descent from Venus and Anchises.

19. **ēius,** ' of that,' agreeing with *bellī*.

20. **eī,** ' to that-man,' ' to him.'   *Britannia nōn cūrae erat*, ' Britain was not a care ' : *cūrae* is Dative, lit. ' for a care ' =' a cause of anxiety.'

22. *dē eā intrandā*, ' about it to-be-entered ' =' about entering it ' ; *eā* agrees with *insulā* understood, ' about that-island.' Cp. O.M. § 24, *locus idōneus est ad nāvigia applicanda*, ' for vessels to-be-brought-to-land.'

It will be seen that *is, ea, id* may be used as an Adjective (=' that ') or as a Pronoun (=' that-one,' ' he,' ' she,' ' it,' etc.).

is, ea, id—*SINGULAR NUMBER.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	is	ea	id
Acc.	eum	eam	id
Gen.		ēius	
Dat.		eī	
Abl.	eō	eā	eō

3. [**is, ea, id,** Singular and Plural Numbers.]

4. **eōrum,** ' of those,' agreeing with *rēgum.*

5. **eum,** ' that-man,' ' him ' ; cp. § 2, l. 10.

7. **eī,** ' to that-man,' ' to him ' ; cp. § 2, l. 8.

10. **eārum,** ' of those,' agreeing with *gentium.*

11. *in* **eīs,** ' on those ' (agreeing with *nummīs* understood), on them.'

12. **ēius,** ' of that,' agreeing with *nōminis.*—On the first coin shown on p. 5, CUNO =Cunobelinus and CAMU =Camulodunum.

13. **ēius,** ' of that-man,' ' of him,' ' his ' ; cp. § 2, l. 10. Translate ' of his father Tasciovanus.'   (See name on second coin).

15. **eō** *tempore* (Abl) . . . *cum,* ' at that time when,' ' at the time when.' The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes **Time when,** as in O.M. § 10, *secundō saeculō* ' in the second century.' The English Preposition to be used in translating such an Ablative is ' at ' or ' in ' or ' on ' (as in ' on the 5th day ').

17. **eī,** ' those ' (agreeing with *principēs* understood) ' those-men,' ' they.'   Note that the Nominative Case of this Pronoun, whether Singular or Plural, is not used in Latin except when there is some emphasis on the word ; in the present sentence the translation ' they ' requires some emphasis in English.   Where no emphasis is required, the Nominative of a Pronoun meaning ' he,' ' she,' ' it ' or ' they ' is omitted altogether in Latin, as in § 1, l. 17, *saepe nōs vīsitant,* ' they often visit us.'

19. *prae-erant imperiō Rōmānō* (Dat.), ' were-in-command to (=of) the Roman empire.'

20. *mortī datus,* ' put to death ' ; *dare* =' to put ' ; see Vocab.

23. Caractacus (whom Tacitus more correctly calls *Caratacus*) and Togodumnus succeeded to their father's throne shortly before

the invasion of Britain by Claudius in A.D. 43. Togodumnus met his death in one of the battles fought in that year.

is, ea, id—*PLURAL NUMBER.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	eī	eae	ea
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat. ⎫ *Abl.* ⎭		eīs	

† 4. 1. **is,** 'that-man,' 'he' (emphatic), referring to *Cunobelīnus.*

5. **ēius,** 'of that,' agreeing with *aetātis.*

6. **ēius,** 'of that' (agreeing with *insulae* understood), 'of it,' 'its.' **eōs,** 'those (inhabitants),' 'those-men,' 'them.'

11. **eīs,** 'to those-men,' 'to them.'

14. **eōrum,** 'of those-men,' 'of them,' 'their.'

† 5. [**ēius, eōrum, eārum,** contrasted with **suus, a, um.**]

3. **ēius,** 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to Claudius, who is mentioned in the previous sentence.

6. **suīs,** 'his,' agreeing with *ducibus*, and referring to Claudius, who is spoken of in *this* sentence : for *mandāvit,* 'he entrusted,' means 'Claudius entrusted.'

8. *eae,* 'those' = 'those forces,' 'they,' with emphasis.

9. *oppidum Camulodūnum,* 'the town Colchester,' or, as we generally say, 'the town *of* Colchester.' This 'of' after 'town' is peculiar in English : we do not say 'the river *of* Thames.' In all such phrases Latin makes the Name agree in Case with the word for 'town,' 'river,' 'mountain,' etc. Thus *flūmen Tamesa* (§ 2), *flūmen Tamesam* (Accusative), *flūminis Tamesae* (Genitive) etc.

11. *ea,* 'that,' agreeing with *urbs* understood ; 'that-city was the first Roman city in Britain.' The settlement (*colōnia*) of Roman soldiers was established at Colchester about A.D. 50 ; and after this the town was called a 'colony.'

13. *reportātam,* 'won,' an Adjective formed from the Verb *reportō,* 'I win,' and agreeing with *victōriam.* Note the Latin order of words ('from the Britons won' = 'won from the Britons '). Similarly in English we may say "an exercise, *neatly written,* was handed in by me"; the Adjective 'written' being formed from the Verb 'I write.'   **suō,** 'his' or 'his-own,' agreeing with *fīliō,* and referring to *princeps Rōmānus.*

nōmen Britannicō, 'the name Britannicus'; but *Britannicō* does not agree with *nōmen* in Case; it is a Dative, and agrees with *fīliō suō,* so that the literal translation is 'gave the name to his son, to Britannicus': cp. § 1, l. 7 (*ducis*).

14. **ēius,** 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to *princeps Rōmānus* in the previous sentence.

16. **sē,** 'themselves,' referring to the Britons ('they').

19. After the destruction of his dominion in the Eastern part of Britain in A.D. 43 Caractacus withdrew into Wales, where he gained many successes against the Romans.

20. **ēius,** 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to *Caractacus* in the previous sentence.

22. *Vīrocōnii,* 'at Viroconium (Wroxeter)'; *Dēvae,* 'at Deva (Chester)'; *Iscae,* 'at Isca (Caerleon).' These Cases denoting 'at' are called **Locative Cases**; they are found chiefly in Names of Towns, which accordingly have one more Case than other Nouns. But the Locative is always the same in form as one of the other Cases; in the 1st and 2nd Declensions, Singular Number, it is the same in form as the Genitive. Note that there is no Preposition used to express 'at' before the Name of a Town.

25. **eōrum,** 'of those-men,' 'their,' referring to *Silurēs* in the previous sentence.

26. *Rōmam,* 'to Rome.' The Accusative of the Name of a Town without a Preposition is used to express 'to'; so in O.M. § 24, *Dubrās,* 'to Dover.' 'To Wroxeter' would be *Vīrocōnium*; 'to Chester,' *Dēvam*; 'to Caerleon,' *Iscam.*

The words **ēius** and **eōrum, eārum** are Genitive Cases of **is, ea, id,** and therefore mean properly 'of that-person' or 'of that-thing'; plural, 'of those-persons' or 'of those-things.' Hence they generally refer to some person or thing mentioned in a previous sentence. The Adjective **suus, a, um,** on the other hand, means properly 'his own,' or 'her own,' or 'its own,' or 'their own.' Hence it naturally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence; for we do not often say

' his own ' when we are referring to a person or thing mentioned in a different sentence. For instance, we may say ' Claudius gave this name *to his own son*,' but not ' Claudius was the emperor of Rome. And the Romans gave this name *to his own son*.'—The person or thing referred to by *suus, a, um* generally stands in the Nominative Case, but not always : for instance, we may say ' I will visit him in his own house ' (*domī suae eum vīsitābō*, where *suae* refers to the Accusative *eum*) ; ' give to each man his own ' (*suum cuīque dā*, where *suum* refers to the Dative *cuīque*).

6. [ipse, ipsa, ipsum, Singular and Plural.]

4. **ipsum,** ' himself,' agreeing with *rēgem*.   *rēgem spectandī*, ' of seeing the King ' ; cp. O.M § 28, *Rōmānī cupidī erant insulam nostram vīsitandī et explōrandī*, ' of visiting and exploring our island ' : *spectandī* is the Genitive of a Noun in *-ndum*, formed from the Verb *spectō*. These Nouns in *-ndum* are like the English Nouns in -ing, which are formed from Verbs (' seeing,' ' visiting ').

7. **ipsō,** ' himself,' agreeing with *Caractacō*.

8. **ēius,** ' of that man,' ' of him,' ' his,' ; *ēius*, not *suīs*, is used here, though it refers to *Caractacō* in the same sentence, because *suīs* would naturally refer to *multitūdō*, and this would make nonsense (' their own wife and brothers '). *in catēnīs*, ' in chains ' = ' chained.' [So in Livy, xlv. 40. 6.]

9. **ipse,** ' himself,' agreeing with *Caractacus*.

11. **ipsīus** agrees with *principis*.   *collocātus . . . inquit*, ' placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, he said ' = ' he, placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, said.' The Adjective *collocātus* agrees with ' he ' in *inquit*, which might have been expressed by a separate word (*Is, ante oculōs . . . collocātus, inquit*). Compare in English " Driven out of its course by adverse winds, the ship was cast ashore " = " The ship, driven . . . winds, was cast ashore." The only difference is that the order of words in Latin would be " The ship, *out of its course by adverse winds driven*, was cast ashore."

14, 15. *tōtī orbī terrārum imperitandī*, ' of giving orders to (= of holding sway over) the whole world,' ; *imperitandī* is the Genitive of a Noun in *-ndum* formed from the Verb *imperitō* : *tōtī orbī* is Dative, depending on *imperitandī*. The Adjective *tōtus, a, um* is declined like other Adjectives in *-us, a, um*, except in the Gen. Sing. *tōt-īus* and the Dat. Sing. *tōt-ī*. These forms are the same for all three Genders, like *ips-īus, ips-ī*.

19. **ipsī,** ' himself,' agreeing with *Caractacō*.

It will be seen that the word *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* is used like the English word ' -self ' in ' my-self,' ' thy-self,' ' him-self,' ' her-self,' ' it-self ' ; and in the Plural like ' -selves ' (our-selves, your-selves, them-selves). It is generally an Adjective, but may also be a Pronoun.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, ' -self.'

	SINGULAR.			*PLURAL.*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Gen.		ipsīus		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī				
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

7. [ille, illa, illud (declined at end of § 8).]

4. **ille,** ' that-man,' ' he,' referring to Suetonius (1. 2, ' the former '), not to Nero (1. 3). The Nominative Case always has some emphasis ; cp. 1. 7.

10. **illam,** ' that,' agreeing with *colōniam.*   **illī,** ' those,' agreeing with *veterānī.*

16. **illa,** ' those,' agreeing with *aedificia.* Here *illa* comes before its Noun, which is its usual position, except when an Adjective or another Noun is added to the phrase, as in *veterānī illī Rōmānī* and *colōniam illam Camulodūnum* ; in such cases it comes between the Noun and the other word.

18. **illō,** ' that,' agreeing with *templō.*

8. 1. **illa,** ' that ' or ' the,' agreeing with *rēgīna.*

5. **illīs,** ' for those-men,' ' for them,' referring to the Romans, who are in her mind ; Dative Case.

11. **Illōs,** ' those-men,' ' them ' ; put at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis ; so, too, *nōs* (1. 12), which is made still more emphatic by being repeated : ' us our country and homes, us freedom calls to arms.'

14. **illud,** ' that,' agreeing with *simulācrum.*

17, 18. In Cowper's poem the Druid says to Boadicea—

> ' Regions Caesar never knew
>   Thy posterity shall sway.'

19. **illīus,** ' of that,' agreeing with *deī*.   **Cp.** *ipsīus, ēius.*

20. **illud,** ' that,' agreeing with *consilium* understood : ' that (counsel) is the counsel of a woman.'   Cp. on § 5, l. 11.

21. *num . . . eritis,* ' will you men be less brave ? '   *Num* is a word that turns a statement into a question. The only English word by which it can be translated is ' whether.'   But this use of ' whether ' is old-fashioned, and no word is necessary in English for *num.*

It will be seen that *ille, illa, illud,* like *is, ea, id,* may be used either as an Adjective (= ' that ') or as a Pronoun (= ' that-one,' ' he,' ' she,' ' it,' etc.).

<p align="center">ille, illa, illud, ' that,' ' that-one.'</p>

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Gen.		illīus		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.		illī				
Abl.	illō	illā	illō		illīs	

† **9.** 4. *ex insulā Mōnā* ; cp. on § 5, l. 9, *oppidum Camulodūnum.*

7. *iam tum,* ' already then ' =' even then.'   *cōpiā mercā- tōrum celebre,* ' crowded with a multitude of merchants ' ; cp. O.M. § 15, *crēber puerīs et puellīs.*

11, 12. *Mīlia* (Plur.) takes the Gen. (*Rōmānōrum*) ; cp. l. 21.

13. *suōs,* ' his men,' ' his own men,' =*suōs virōs. sē parābat,* ' was preparing himself.'   *ad,* ' for.'

16. *paucī illī Rōmānī,* ' those few Romans ' ; cp. on § 7, l. 16.

22. *proeliī spectandī causā,* ' for the sake of seeing the battle,' lit. ' for the sake of the battle to-be-seen ' ; cp. on § 2, l. 22.

23. *ipsa sē,* ' herself . . . herself ' ; *ipsa* agrees with *Boadicēa.*

<p align="center">10. [hīc, haec, hōc (declined at end of § 12).]</p>

1. **Hīc,** ' this,' agreeing with *fīnis* understood ; cp. on § 5, l. 11.

6. *nōnī principis,* in apposition to *Vespasiānī* ; cp. § 1, l. 7.

10. **Hūius,** ' of this,' agreeing with *virī clārī.*

11. **Hunc,** ' this,' agreeing with *virum.*

11. 1. *prīmō annō,* like *eō tempore,* § 3, l. **15.**

3. **hanc,** ' this,' agreeing with *gentem.*   *fere tōtam,* ' almost whole ' ; translate ' almost the whole of this tribe.'

7. **Hī,** ' these-men ' or ' the latter ' : contrast *ille, illa, illud,* ' the former,' § 7, l. 4.   *perītī natandī.* The Adjective *perītus,* ' skilled,' takes a Genitive (Engl. ' skilled in '); O.M. § 15, *lūdōrum perītus.*

10. **haec,** ' this ' or ' the latter,' agreeing with *classis* understood.

11–14. *ipse penetrat,* ' he himself (=Agricola) penetrates.'

15. *velut in alteram insulam,* ' as (*or* as it were) into a second island ' ; cp. O.M. § 8, *noctū pharos spectāmus, velut stellās clārās in ōceanō.*

18. *Graupius,* the proper form of the word ' Grampian,' which latter has come from a misprint in the earliest printed edition of the Agricola of Tacitus, published in the 15th century. But for this we should have said ' My name is Norval ; on the *Graupian* Hills,' etc.

20. **hīs,** ' with these ' (= the following), agreeing with *verbīs.*

12. 1. **haec,** ' this,' agreeing with *pugna.*

2. *tōtī Britanniae,* ' to the whole of Britain ' ; cp. § 11, l. 3.

3, 4. **Hī,** ' these,' agreeing with *montēs* (masc.) ; **hae,** ' these,' agreeing with *silvae* (fem.) ; **haec,** ' these,' agreeing with *maria* (neut.).

5. **hunc,** ' this,' agreeing with *angulum.*

7. *nē mare quidem,* ' not even the sea.' Note *nē* instead of *nōn,* and the position of *mare* between *nē* and *quidem.*

9. **hanc,** ' this,' agreeing with *insulam.*

12. *vestrōs* is masculine because it belongs to both the words *līberōs* and *uxōrēs,* which together =*hominēs,* ' human beings ' ; and *homō* is always masc. in Latin.

13. *vastāverint,* Fut. Perf. ; ' when they shall have laid waste.'

15. **haec,** ' this,' agreeing with *Calēdonia* : ' this Caledonia of ours.'

hīc, haec, hōc, ' this,' ' this one.'

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL. | | |
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hī-c	hae-c	hō-c	hī	hae	hae-c
Acc.	hun-c	han-c	hō-c	hōs	hās	hae-c
Gen.		hūius		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.		huī-c		}		
Abl.	hō-c	hā-c	hō-c	}	hīs	

The c which is printed after the hyphen is an addition which is made to the word, but only in certain Cases.   If you take off the c, the rest of these Cases look more like Cases of other Pronouns (ille, illum, illīus, illī, illō).   The c means ' here,' like the French ci in celui ci ;   thus hī-c = ' this here.'

The Dative Singular is to be pronounced as one syllable.

† **13.** 1. in hunc modum, ' in the following way ' ;   for hōc modō.

5. hī, ' the latter,' the Caledonians, as also in l. 14.

6. hominēs ignāvōs, ' cowardly fellows,' in apposition to hōs. Homō is sometimes used in a contemptuous sense, but never vir.

18. suōs ipsī, ' themselves their-own ' ;   cp. ipsa sē, § 9, l. 23.

14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]

4. **hūmān-ior,** ' kind-er,' ' more humane ' ;   from hūmān-us, a, um, § 10, l. 14.

5. **clēment-ior,** ' more clement,' ' more merciful ' ;   from clēmens, § 10, l. 14.

6. **turbulent-ior,** ' more turbulent' ;   from turbulent-us, a, um, § 10. l. 3.

7. **fort-iōr-ēs,** ' brav-er,' agreeing with hostēs ;   from fort-is, e, § 2, l. 14.   **audāc-iōr-ēs,** ' bold-er,' from audax, § 8, l. 1.

9. **iust-iōr-em,**   just-er,' agreeing with sē ;   from iust-us, a, um, § 10, l. 14. Translate ' who showed himself juster ? '

12. **in-hūmān-ius,** ' more in-human,' ' un-kinder,' agreeing with quid, Neuter.   **saev-ius,** ' more savage ' ;   from saev-us, a, um, § 12, l. 6.

13. **crūdēl-iōr-ēs**, ' more cruel,' agreeing with *hostēs* ; from *crūdēl-is, e*, § 8, l. 19.

18. **cār-ior**, ' dear-er ' ; from *cār-us, -a, -um*, § 4, l. 11.

19. **ācr-iōr-ēs**, ' keen-er,' agreeing with *dēfensōrēs* ; from *ācer, ācr-is, e*, § 4, l. 2.

20. **pulchr-ius**, ' more glorious,' agreeing with *nihil*, Neuter ; from *pulche,, pulchr-a, um*, § 10, l. 13.

21. **miser-ius**, ' more miserable ' ; from *miser, miser-a, um*.

It will be seen that the Comparative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -er or by the use of ' more,' is formed in Latin by adding **-ior** (or, for the Neuter, **-ius**) to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending *-us* or *-is* or *-s* alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus :—

	WITHOUT THE ENDING.	COMPARATIVE.
cār-us (-a, -um)	cār-	cār-ior, cār-ius
fort-is (-e)	fort-	fort-ior, fort-ius
clēmen-s, for clēment-s	clēment-	clēment-ior, clēment-ius
audax, =audāc-s	audāc-	audāc-ior, audāc-ius

When the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any *-us* or *-is*, there is nothing to cut off from this Case.* Thus :—

miser (miser-a, -um)   miser-   miser-ior, miser-ius

But the *e* that comes before the *r* is dropped whenever it is dropped in the Feminine and Neuter (and in the other Cases of the Masculine) of the Adjective itself. Thus :—

pulcher (pulchr-a, -um)   pulchr-   pulchr-ior, pulchr-ius
ācer (ācr-is, -e)   ācr-   ācr-ior, ācr-ius

The Comparative, therefore, may be found most easily by cutting off the ending of the *Feminine*, and adding *-ior* or *-ius*.

It will be seen also that the Comparative of an Adjective is itself an Adjective ; it can be declined (like a Noun of the 3rd Declension, such as Masc. *scriptor*, Neut. *corpus*), and must agree with the Noun to which it belongs. Its Feminine is the same as its Masculine ; but its Neuter is different in the Nominative and Accusative Cases.

---

* The Nominative Singular Masculine of these Adjectives in *er* has already dropped its ending.

Declension of Comparatives.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	cārior	cārius	cāriōr-ēs	cāriōr-a
Acc.	cāriōr-em	cārius	cāriōr-ēs	cāriōr-a
Gen.	cāriōr-is		cāriōr-um	
Dat.	cāriōr-ī		cāriōr-ibus	
Abl.	cāriōr-e		cāriōr-ibus	

Note that if we want to say ' less dear,' ' less brave,' etc. (which is also a kind of Comparative of ' dear,' ' brave,' etc.) we must use the Adverb *minus*, which means ' less ' : for instance, *minus cārus, minus cāra, minus cārum*, ' less dear.'

15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

2. **saev-issima,** ' the most savage,' agreeing with *bella* ; from the Adjective *saev-us, a, um.* **inhūmān-issima,** ' the most inhuman ' ; from *inhūmān-us, a, um.*

4. *pugnāta,* ' fought,' is an Adjective formed from the Verb *pugnō,* ' I fight,' and agreeing with *bella illa* ; the whole phrase *temporibus antīquīs contrā gentēs barbarās pugnāta* is like the phrase *ā Britannīs reportātam* in § 5, ll. 12, 13 ; see note there.

5. **crūdēl-issimī,** ' most cruel ' = ' very cruel,' agreeing with *hostēs* ; from *crūdēl-is, e.*

9. **ūtil-issima,** ' most useful ' = ' very useful,' agreeing with *pax* ; from *ūtil-is, e.*

12. *revocāvit* means here not ' called *back*,' but ' called *off*,' ' withdrew.' **optimīs,** ' very good,' agreeing with *viīs* ; irregular Superlative of *bonus, a, um,* § 4, l. 1.

13. **pulcher-rimīs,** ' very fine,' agreeing with *aedificiīs* ; from *pulcher, pulchr-a, um.* **celeber-rimīs,** ' very famous,' from *celeber, celebr-is, e,* § 1, l. 8. *templīs*, etc., in apposition to *aedificiīs.*

18. **fort-issimī,** ' very brave,' agreeing with *dēfensōrēs* ; from *fort-is, e.* **ācer-rimī,** ' very keen ' ; from *ācer, ācr-is, e.*

22. *Callēvae Atrebatum,* ' at Calleva of the Atrebates ' = ' at Silchester ' ; *Callēvae* is the Locative ; cp. *Dēvae* and *Iscae,* § 5.

24. *in insulā Vectī,* at Brading, near Sandown. In several of the rooms the floor is covered with mosaics.

27. *mediocriter hūmānae,* 'moderately civilized,' 'pretty civilized.' Contrast with this *hūmanissimus =* 'very civilized.'

It will be seen that the Superlative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -est, or by the use of 'most,' is formed in Latin by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum** to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending *-us* or *-is* or *-s* alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus :—

	WITHOUT THE ENDING.	SUPERLATIVE.
cār-us (-a, -um)	cār-	cār-issimus, cār-issima, cār-issimum
fort-is (-e)	fort-	fort-issimus, fort-issima, fort-issimum
clēmen-s, for clēment-s	clēment-	clēment-issimus, clēment-issima, clēment-issimum

But when the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any *-us* or *-is,* the Superlative is formed by doubling the last letter of the Nom. Sing. Masc. and adding **-imus, -ima, -imum.** Thus we get (with **rr**)—

	SUPERLATIVE.
miser (miser-a, -um)	miser-r-imus, miser-r-ima, miser-r-imum
pulcher (pulchr-a, -um)	pulcher-r-imus, pulcher-r-ima, pulcher-r-imum
ācer (ācr-is, -e)	ācer-r-imus, ācer-r-ima, ācer-r-imum

Note that the *e* before the *r* of the Nom. Sing. Masc. is *never dropped* to form the Superlative.

Superlatives are declined in the same way as other Adjectives in *-us, -a, -um.*

16. [Passive Voice of 1st Conj. ; Present, Past Imperfect, Future (conjugated at end of § 17).]

7. **delectant-ur,** 'they are delighted,' 'they are interested '; Passive of *dēlectant,* 'they delight,' 'they please.' The word *suae* in l. 6 is emphatic, 'their own '; these two boys are Scots.

8. **laudāt-ur,** 'is praised '; Passive of *laudat,* 'praises.' *Nōn-ne* in l. 7 is simply the word *nōn* with *-ne* tacked on to it to turn the statement into a question ; compare O.M. § 19, *nōn-ne in oppidīs habitābant?* 'did not they live in towns?' The word *-ne,* like *num* (§ 8), need not be translated by any separate word in English.

9. **expugnābant-ur,** 'used to be taken by storm'; Passive of *expugnābant.* Similarly **vastābant-ur** and **dēbellābant-ur** in l. 10.

Note that the Person *by whom* the action is done is expressed by the Preposition *ā* or *ab* with the Ablative Case; thus *ā Tacitō* and *ab aliīs imperātōribus.*

13. **delecto-r,** 'I am delighted (*or* pleased)'; Passive of *dēlectō.*

17. **ornābāt-ur,** 'was being adorned'; Passive of *ornābat. aedificiīs Rōmānīs,* 'with Roman buildings' (l. 16).

17. 2. **dēlectābant-ur,** 'used to be delighted (*or* pleased).'

4. *animō acrī et impigrō,* 'with (=of) keen and active mind'; Ablative of Quality, used like an Adjective (*keen-minded*) after the verb 'to be.' Cp. § 2, l. 14.

8. *Britannōs cantāvisse,* Accusative with Infinitive; § 2, l. 10.

9. **dēlectā-minī,** 'are delighted,' with *vōs,* 'you'; Passive of *dēlectā-tis.* Translate 'you boys of the present day take pleasure in . . .'

10. *patru-issime,* 'kindest,' 'most like a kind uncle,' is the Vocative of *patruissimus,* a Superlative invented by the poet Plautus as a joke. It is formed not from any Adjective, but from the Noun *patru-us*; as though we were to say in English 'uncle, uncl-er, uncl-est.'

11. **dēlectā-ris,** 'you are delighted,' 'you take pleasure'; Passive of *dēlectā-s.* Here it stands in a question: *nōn-ne dēlectāris?* 'are you not delighted?' *corporis certāminibus,* 'by contests of the body' ='by athletic sports.'

13. **dēlectāba-r,** 'I used to be delighted'; Passive of *dēlectāba-m.* *adulescens* here stands in apposition to 'I'; 'I, a young man,' or 'I, as a young man.'

14. **dēlectābo-r,** 'I shall be delighted'; Passive of *dēlectābō.*

18, 19. There are two lines of verse by a poet of the first century A.D. 'Nor hast thou less mobility =(quickness of movement), if perchance it pleases thee either to double (=to return) the flying ball or to pick it up (= to catch it) falling.' *volant-em* and *cadent-em* are Acc. Sing. of Adjectives formed from the Verbs *volō* (1st Conj.) and *cadō* (3rd Conj.): Nom. *volan-s, caden-s,* like *monstran-s* in O.M. § 41, *digitō ad orientem monstrans.*

20. *mūtātō nōmine,* etc., 'the story is told about you with changed name (= under a different name).' This is a quotation from Horace; it means 'the cap fits you.'

F

Formation of the Passive Voice.

<div style="float:left">THIS RULE IS TRUE OF ALL THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.</div>

It will be seen that the Passive of the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses is formed from the Active

(i.) by adding *-ur* in the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur. ;

(ii.) by adding *-r* in the 1st Persons Sing. and Plur. ; which *r* displaces the last letter of the Active if it is a consonant.

(iii.) by changing the *-s* of the 2nd Person Sing. into *-ris*, and the *-tis* of the 2nd Person Plur. into *-minī*.

Thus we get (with some changes in the quantities of the vowels) :—

		PRESENT PASS.	PAST IMPERF. PASS.	FUTURE PASS.
S.	1	dēlecto- r	dēlectāba-r	dēlectābo-r
	2	dēlectā-ris	dēlectābā-ris	dēlectābe-ris *
	3	dēlectāt-ur	dēlectābāt-ur	dēlectābit-ur
P.	1	dēlectāmu-r	dēlectābāmu-r	dēlectābimu-r
	2	dēlectā-minī	dēlectābā-minī	dēlectābi-minī
	3	dēlectant-ur	dēlectābant-ur	dēlectābunt-ur

* Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of *i* into *e* ; delectabi-s becomes delectabe-ris.

† **18.** In this section it will be seen that Questions may be introduced **either** (1) by words like *cūr*, ' why ' ; *quota hōra*, ' what o'clock ' ; *quandō*, ' when ' ; **or** (2) by a word like *num* or *-ne*, which need not be translated by any separate word in English. There is a great difference between these two kinds of question. Try answering them. The second kind may be answered by a simple ' yes ' or ' no ' ; thus *nōn-ne melius erit?* ' will it not be better ? ' expects the answer ' yes ' : and *num vōs virī minus fortēs eritis?* ' will you men be less brave ?' (§ 8) expects the answer ' no.' But the first kind cannot be answered by either ' yes ' or ' no,' and takes no *num* or *-ne*.

3. *Rutupiās*, ' to Richborough ' ; Accusative of the Plural Name *Rutupiae* ; cp. *Rōmam dēportāvērunt*, § 5, l. 26.—So in l. 9 (lit. ' you will come to R.' =' you will arrive at R.')

14. *melius*, ' better,' Neuter Comparative of *bonus, a, um* ; cp. *optimus*, § 15, l. 12.

16. *festīnāre*, ' to hurry,' different from *properāre*, ' to hasten.'

20. *quandō*, ' when ? ' (=' at what time ? '), differs from *cum*, ' when ' (l. 9).

19. [**quī, quae, quod** and **quis, quid,** in questions.]

2. *ā Calēdonibus reportātā* ; cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13, *ā Britannīs reportātam.*

3. quis, 'who,' agreeing with *Galgacus* ('Galgacus was who ? ').

8. quid, 'what,' agreeing with *nōmen.*

12. quī, 'who,' agreeing with *Pictī.*

15. quō, 'at what,' agreeing with *tempore* ; cp. *eō tempore,* § 3, l. 15.

18. quā *ex = ex* **quā,** 'from what,' with *terrā.*

21. quem, 'whom' ; *fuisse,* 'to have been,' from *fuī.* Cp. § 2, l. 10.

24. cūius, 'of which,' agreeing with *partis.*

It will be seen that *quī, quae, quod* is used as an Adjective, =English 'what ?' or 'which ?' In the Nominative Case Singular there is also a Pronoun, *quis* (Masc. and Fem.)= ' who ?' *quid* (Neut.) =' what ?'

	SINGULAR.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quī (quis)	quae (quis)	quod (quid)
Acc.	quem	quam	quod (quid)
Gen.		cūius·	
Dat.		cuī	
Abl.	quō	quā	quō
	PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quī	quae	quae·
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat. *Abl.*		quibus	

The Dative Singular is one syllable (compare *huīc,* § 12, end); but it is sometimes pronounced as two syllables in order to distinguish it from the Nom. Masc.

20. [quī, quae, quod, without any questioning sense.]

7. **quī,** 'who,' referring to *Hadriānō*.

10. **cūius,** 'of which' or 'whose,' referring to *vallum.*

11. **quī,** 'who,' referring to *Antōnīnus Pius*.

13. **cui,** 'to which,' referring to *vallum*.

14. **quem,** 'whom,' referring to *Septimius Sevērus.*

15. *paucīs annīs ante,* 'a few years before,' lit. ' by a few years before (*or* previously) ' ; *ante* is here an Adverb, not a Preposition.

17. *Eburācī,* 'at York ' ; Locative Case of *Eburācum*; cp. on § 5, l. 22.

18. **quō,** 'in which,' agreeing with *annō*.   *trucīdāta fuisse narrantur,* 'are said to have been slaughtered.'

20. *ō sī sīc omnēs,* lit. 'oh, if thus all ! '= ' oh, if they had killed them all thus ! '

It will be seen that *quī, quae, quod* (but not *quis* or *quid*) may be used without any questioning sense, just like the English ' who ' or ' which.' Sometimes it begins a separate sentence, as in the last instance above (*Quō annō quinquāgintā mīlia Rōmānōrum trucīdāta fuisse narrantur*), which is just as much a separate sentence as if it were a question (*Quō annō . . . narrantur ?* ' in which year are fifty thousand Romans said to-have-been slaughtered ? '). But generally *quī, quae, quod* begins a little sentence which is only a part of a bigger sentence, as in *Septimius Sevērus [quem Rōmānī paucīs annīs ante principem creāverant] maximam expeditiōnem comparāvit.* In such cases the little sentence, here printed in square brackets, is called at Subordinate Clause. But if you examine it, you will find that it is complete in itself : ' whom the Romans had created emperor is like ' whom had the Romans created emperor ? ' (*Quem Rōmānī principem creāverant ?*), except that it is not a question. This helps us to see the reason for the **Case** and the **Gender** and **Number** of *quem*. It is in the Accusative Case because, if the clause were turned into a separate sentence, the word for ' whom ' would have to be in the Accusative Case : it is in the Masculine Gender and the Singular Number because it refers to *Septimius Sevērus* which stands in the other clause of the sentence. Thus in order to find the Case of ' which ' turn the clause into a separate sentence : in order to find its Gender and Number think of what is *meant* by the word.

RULE.—**Quī, quae, quod, when it introduces a Subordinate Clause, stands in the Case in which it would stand if the Clause were a separate sentence; and it agrees in Gender and Number with the Noun to which it refers**.

Note that the Case of the Noun to which it refers may *happen* to be the same as the Case of *quī, quae, quod* itself, as in *Antōnīnus Pius, quī . . .* ; see l. 11.

† **21.** 1. *tū-ne Pictus es* ? ' are *you* a Pict ? ' The *-ne* turns the statement into a question, as in § 18, l. 14, *nōn-ne melius erit* ?; and the word *tū* is put in because it is emphatic. ' Are you a Pict ? ' (without emphasis) would be *Pictus-ne es* ? ' Are you not a Pict ? ' would be *Nōn-ne Pictus es* ?

3. *Celticā orīgine*, ' of Celtic origin ' ; cp. *animō fortī*, § 2, l. 14.

4. *et frātris tuī*, ' and your brother's (name).'

6, 7. *tōtī insulae nōmen est Britanniae*, ' to the whole island there is the name Britain,' ' the whole island has the name Britain ' ; cp. on § 5, l. 13 (*nōmen Britannicō*).

14. *Antōnī*, Vocative of *Antōnius* (the writer of these Commentaries) ; cp. *fīlī*, Vocative of *fīlius*.

18. *ubi lībertās, ibi patria est*, ' where (or wherever) there is freedom, there is the fatherland.'

22. [2nd Conjugation ; Pres., Past Imperf., and Future, Active.]

2. **videō**, ' I see.' Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st Conj. All Verbs of the 2nd Conj. will be found in the Vocabulary with the ending *eō*.

5. **vident**, ' they see.' **salvēte** ! ' hail ! ' lit. ' be safe and sound.' **gaudēmus**, ' we are glad.'

7. **respondet**, ' replies,' ' responds.' *bene nōs* **habēmus**, lit. ' we have ourselves well ' = ' we are all right ' ; *nous nous portons bien*.

8. *nōs nōn* **pigēbit**, ' it will not vex us ' = ' we shall not mind.' *Piget*, ' it vexes,' is a Verb which can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing. ; cp. ' it rains,' etc. **sedēre**, ' to sit down.'

9. **habēbimus**, ' we shall have.' *in oculīs* = ' in sight.'

10. **vidētis**-*ne*, ' do you see ? ' *ut . . .* **dēlet**, ' how time destroys everything.'

11. **rīdent**, ' laugh,' or ' smile ' ; cp. *cachinnāre*, § 17, l. 15.

14. **iacet,** ' it lies ' = ' it is situated ' (*situm est*).

19. *dēlētus, a, um,* ' destroyed,' an Adjective formed from *dēleō.*   *spectat ad,* ' looks towards ' = ' faces.'

22. **habēbat,** ' it used to have,' ' it had.'

24. **vidēs,** ' you see ' = one sees ' ; cp. O.M. § 11, *ex castellō fretum Gallicum spectās,* ' one looks at the English Channel.'

It will be seen that the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses of the 2nd Conjugation differ from those of the 1st Conjugation only in having an *e* instead of an *a* in the endings. (In the 1st Conjugation the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present has lost its *a* : *spectō* is for *spectaō*).

Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.

ACTIVE VOICE.

		PRESENT.	*PAST IMPERFECT.*	*FUTURE.*
S.	1	habeō	habēbam	habēbō
	2	habēs	habēbās	habēbis
	3	habet	habēbat	habēbit
P.	1	habēmus	habēbāmus	habēbimus
	2	habētis	habēbātis	habēbitis
	3	habent	habēbant	habēbunt

INFINITIVE.		*IMPERATIVE.*
habēre	S. 2	habē
	P. 2	habēte

23. [**4th Declension** and **2nd Conjugation, Passive** (same tenses).]

1. **portus,** ' a port,' ' a harbour.'   The case-endings of the Nouns printed black in this section should be compared with those of the 2nd Decl. ; for instance, *portus* with *hortus.*

2. **Portuī Rutupīnō,** ' Richborough Harbour,' agreeing in Case with *cuī.*   Cp. on § 21, ll. 6, 7.

3. *ad hunc* **portum,** ' to this harbour.'

4. *omnium* **portuum,** ' of all harbours.'

6. *in lītore* **portūs,** ' on the shore of the harbour.'

12. *quattuor et quadrāgintā* **passūs** *longum,* ' forty-four paces (*or* yards) long.'

13. *in* **manū**, ' in the hand '=' in our hands.'
tenēbamus, ' we held,' or ' we were holding,' from *teneō.*

16. *pertinet*, ' extends,' ' stretches ' ; from *per-tineō* (which is a compound of *per* and *teneō*, lit. ' I hold through ').

17. **ūsuī**, ' for use ' (Dat.). *Cuī* is also a Dative, so that the literal translation of the sentence is ' To whom was this tunnel for a use ? ' or ' To whom did this tunnel exist for a purpose ? ' In English we should say, ' To whom was it *of use*, or *useful* ? ' This example throws light upon the meaning of the Dative in such sentences as *eī Britannia nōn cūrae erat* (§ 2, l. 20), where we should naturally say in English, ' to him Britain was not *an anxiety* ' ; but the Latin means properly ' to him Britain did not *serve as an anxiety = was not a cause of anxiety.*'

19. *dē* **ūsū**, ' about (*or* concerning) the use.'

20. *sī castellum* **obsidēbātur**, ' if (=if at any time) the castle was besieged ' ; Passive of *obsidēbat* from *ob-sideō* (which is a Compound of *ob* and *sedeō*, lit. ' I sit down against ').

21. **praebērī**, ' to be provided ' ; Passive of *praebēre*, ' to provide.' *Praebeō* is contracted from *prae-hibeō*, lit. ' I hold forth (*-hibeō = habeō*).

23. *ad dextrum* **cornū**, ' at the right wing ' ; *cornū* is (not Abl. but) Accusative Singular of a Neuter Noun of the 4th Decl.

28. *custōdem valēre iubēmus*, ' we bid the keeper good-day (*lit.* to-be-in-good-health).'

Fourth Declension.

| | MASCULINES & FEMININES. | | NEUTERS. | |
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N., V.	portus	} portūs	} cornū	cornua
Acc.	portum			
Gen.	portūs	portuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	portuī	} portibus	cornuī	} cornibus
Abl.	portū		cornū	

RULE OF GENDER.—Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-us* are Masculine, except a few which are Feminine (*manus*, ' hand ' ; *Īdūs*, plur., ' Ides ' ; and a few others). Note that none of these Feminines end in *-tus* ; all those that end in *-tus* are Masculine.
Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-ū* are Neuter.

Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.

Passive Voice (see Rule, § 17).

		PRESENT.	PAST IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
S.	1	habeo-r	habēba-r	habēbo-r
	2	habē-ris	habēbā-ris	habēbe-ris *
	3	habēt-ur	habēbāt-ur	habēbit-ur
P.	1	habēmu-r	habēbāmu-r	habēbimu-r
	2	habē-minī	habēbā-minī	habēbi-minī
	3	habent-ur	habēbant-ur	habēbunt-ur

* Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of *i* into *e*, as in the 1st Conj. : habēbi-s becomes habēbe-ris.

INFINITIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
haberī	Not yet learned

24. [Tenses from the **Perfect Stem Active, 2nd Conj.**]

2. **dēlēv-it**, 'destroyed,' from *dēleō.* Contrast *spectāv-ī, -istī, -it*, etc.

3. *con-stat*, lit. 'stands' or 'is fixed'; hence 'is known.'

5. *habēt-ur*, 'is held.' *Habeō* may mean 'I hold' as well as 'I have.'

6. *Aqua haerēbat*, 'the water was sticking,' means 'the clock stopped' or 'there was a hitch.' The Romans used water clocks, time being measured by the water running out. **habu-imus**, 'we had.'

9. *in manibus* **habu-erat,** 'had had in her hands ' = 'had been reading.'

10. **tenu-ērunt**, 'held,' from *teneō*, § 23, l. 13.

13. *rēvērā insula*, 'really an island.' The so called 'Isle of Thanet' is now part of the mainland.

15. *duo tantum vel tria mīlia passuum*, 'only two or three miles (*lit.* 'thousands of paces).' The Latin for 'a mile' is *mille passūs* (*lit.* a thousand paces), and for 'miles' is *mīlia passuum*, which was sometimes shortened to *mīlia* alone, whence comes our word 'mile' and the French *mille.*

17. **habu-ērunt,** 'had' or 'got.'　　**rīs-imus,** 'laughed,' from *rīdeō*, § 22, l. 11.

26. *Germanica.* The German words are *Angel* 'angle,' and *Kante* 'corner,' 'edge.' The *vir doctus* of l. 18 is Dr. John Evans.

It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of the 2nd Conjugation may be formed in several different ways :

(1) It may end in *ēv-* ; thus *dēlēv-* from *dēleō*, which is like *spectāv-* from *spectō*. But this way is not common in the 2nd Conj.

(2) It may end in *u-* ; thus *habu-* from *habeō*. This is the commonest way.

(3) It may end in *s-* ; thus *rīs-* from *rideō* (the *d* being dropped).

(4) It may be formed without any suffix ; thus *respond-* from *respondeō* (§ 25, l. 4).

Second Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.

		PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
S.	1	habu-ī	habu-eram	habu-erō
	2	habu-istī	habu-erās	habu-eris
	3	habu-it	habu-erat	habu-erit
P.	1	habu-imus	habu-erāmus	habu-erimus
	2	habu-istis	habu-erātis	habu-eritis
	3	habu-ērunt	habu-erant	habu-erint

INFINITIVE.
habu-isse

Similarly conjugate **dēlēv-ī, -istī, -it,** etc. ; **rīs-ī, -istī, -it,** etc. ; **respond-ī, -istī, -it,** etc.

† **25.** 4. *aqua* **haes-it** (from *haereō*, § 24, l. 6), 'the clock stopped.' **respond-imus,** 'answered,' 'replied,' from *respondeō*, § 22, l. 7.

5. *ab-hinc annōs duōs*, lit. 'from-hence two years ' = ' two years ago.' *saecula tredecim fuerant*, 'there had been thirteen centuries ' = ' thirteen centuries had elapsed.'

6. *ex quō = ex quō tempore*, 'from what time,' 'since.'

11. *Augustīnum . . . docēre* **iuss-erat** (from *iubeō*, § 23, l. 28), 'had bidden Augustine to teach.' *nōtitiam* depends on *docēre*.

16. *Durovernī* (Locative), *in capite*, 'at Canterbury, in the capital ' = ' at Canterbury, the capital,' without ' in.'

17. **praebu-it** (= *prae-hibu-it*), 'provided,' from *praebeō* (= *prae-hibeō*), § 23, l. 21. *domum*, 'a home,' from *domus* (fem.).

† **26.** 1. *ante-quam*, lit. ' before than ' or ' earlier than,' = ' before the time when ' or simply ' before.' But this ' before,' which is followed by a Verb in a Subordinate Clause (*praebuit*) must be distinguished from the Preposition ' before,' which in Latin is *ante* : cp. *ante finem*, § 1, l. 3. See note on *post-quam* and *post*, § 2, l. 1. *Ante-quam* and *post-quam* join on a little sentence which forms part of a larger sentence, and are therefore called Subordinating ' Conjunctions ' : cp. note at end of § 20.

10. *in hunc modum* ; cp. § 13, l. 1.

16. *pro-hibēbō vōs manēre*, ' I shall forbid you to remain,' like *Augustīnum docēre iusserat*, § 25, ll. 10, 11. *Pro-hibeō* is a compound of *habeō*, lit. ' I for-hold ' (' I hold away,' cp. ' for-bid '); quite different from *praebeō*. *Prohibeō* often takes the Infin.

27. [Perfects and Pluperfects Passive of the 1st or 2nd Conj.]

5. **aedificātae erant**, ' had been built.' The literal translation is ' were (*erant*) built (*aedificātae*),' but this would not give the meaning in English ; for it would naturally mean ' used to be built,' which would be *aedificābantur* in Latin. *Aedificātae erant* means ' were *already* built,' just as we might say ' My letter *was written* before yours arrived ' ; here ' was written ' = ' had been written.' Notice, then, that English phrases like ' was written,' ' were built,' etc., may be used in two different senses, which in Latin are expressed by two different tenses (the Pluperfect and the Past Imperfect). *Dubrīs*, ' at Dover ' ; Locative Case of *Dubrae*. The Locative of a Plural Name like *Dubrae* or *Rutupiae* is the same in form as the Ablative. Contrast *Virocōniī*, *Dēvae*, etc. (§ 5, l. 22) and *Callēvae* below (l. 6).

6. *vīd-istis* and *vīd-ī* are Perf. Act. of *videō*. The Pronouns *vōs* and *ego* are put in because they are emphatic : ' *you* have seen at Dover and *I* at Silchester.'

9. **dēportātus est**, ' was carried-off.' Note the translation ' *was* carried-off,' where the Latin is literally ' *is* carried-off.' But the English ' is carried-off ' would naturally mean ' is generally carried-off,' which would be in Latin *deportātur* (Present Tense) ; so we use ' was ' in such cases. With the whole sentence compare the Active construction in § 5, ll. 25 and 26.

12. **accūsāta est,** ' she was accused,' lit. ' she is accused.'

13. *Pompōniae Graecīnae* ; compare § 21, l. 7, and § 23, l. 2.

15. *dēlēv-erant*, ' they had destroyed ' ; cp. *dēlēv-it*, § 24, l. 2.

17. **dēlēta erat**, ' had been destroyed ' ; here we might say ' was destroyed.' For the Adj. *dēlētus, a, um*, see § 22, l. 19.

19. *tenentēs,* 'holding,' and *cantantēs,* 'singing,' are Active Adjectives formed from the Verbs *teneō* and *cantō.* The vowel before the *-nt* is *e* when the Adjective comes from a Verb of the 2nd Conjugation, *a* when it comes from a Verb of the 1st Conj.

20. *ā domō tuā sanctā,* 'from Thy holy house'; *domō* is the Ablative of the Feminine Noun *domus,* which belongs partly to the 2nd, but mainly to the 4th Decl., and which has a Locative Case (= 'at home').

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	domus	domūs
Acc.	domum	**domōs** (2nd decl.)
Gen.	domūs	domuum (4th) or **domōrum** (2nd)
Dat.	domuī	⎫
Abl.	**domō** (2nd decl.)	⎬ domibus
Loc.	**domī** (2nd decl.)	⎭

Formation of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice.

These Tenses are formed by means of the Passive Adjective and the Verb 'to be,' as in English; but the tense of the Verb 'to be' is generally different in the two languages.

Perfect: Passive Adj. + *sum*; English, 'I have-been ——,' or 'I was ——': thus *aedificātae sunt,* 'they have-been built,' or 'they were built' (lit. 'they are built'); *dēlēta est,* 'it has-been destroyed,' or 'it was destroyed' (lit. 'it is destroyed').

Pluperfect: Passive Adj. + *eram*; English, 'I had-been ——' · thus *aedificātae erant,* 'they had-been built' (lit. 'they were built'); *dēlēta erat,* 'it had-been destroyed' (lit. 'it was destroyed').

Future Perf. Passive Adj. + *erō;* English, 'I shall have been ——'. thus *aedificātae erunt,* 'they will-have-been built' (lit. 'they will-be built'); *dēlēta erit,* 'it will have been destroyed' (lit. 'it will-be destroyed').

Notice that the Passive Adjective must agree in Gender and Number, and the Verb 'to be' in Number and Person, with the Noun of which it is said; thus, *Pompōnia Graecīna accūsāta* **est**; *basilicae aedificātae* **sunt.**

[The above rules apply to all four Conjugations.]

28. [Nouns of the 5th Declension.]

3. *misericordiā com-mōv-erat*, ' had moved with pity.'

4. *multīs annīs ante* ; cp. *paucīs annīs ante*, § 20, l. 15.

5. **faciē** *pulchrā*, ' with (*or* of) handsome face (*or* appearance)' , cp. § 2, l. 14.

6. *com-mōtus est*, ' he was moved,' Perf. Pass.

8. *quōrum in manū*, ' in whose possession (*lit.* hand).'

11. *hūius* **faciēī**, ' of this appearance.' The Gen. has here the same meaning as the Abl. in l. 5.

13. **faciēs**, ' face,' ' appearance ' ; Nom. Sing.

14. *quōs . . . habet*, ' whom the King of Darkness (= the Devil) has as ministers (*or* servants).' These are the words of Gregory, as reported by the Venerable Bede. The phrase *Rex Tenebrārum* could not have been used by a classical Latin writer in this sense.

16. *eōs esse*, ' them to be '=' that they were ' ; cp. § 2, l. 10.

17. *angelicam* **faciem**, ' an angelic face (*or* appearance).'

18. *eōs vocārī oportet*, ' they ought to be called,' lit. ' it behoves them to be called.' *Oportet* can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing. ; cp. *piget*, § 22, l. 8.

22. *ad* **fidem**, ' to the faith ' ; from *fidēs*. The word is here used in a specially Christian sense ; in classical Latin it means ' loyalty ' or ' allegiance.'

25. **diēs**, ' the day ' ; Nom. Sing.

Fifth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom., Voc.	faciēs	faciēs
Acc.	faciem	
Gen.	faciēī	faciērum
Dat.	faciēī	faciēbus
Abl.	faciē	

RULE OF GENDER.—All Nouns of the 5th Declension are Feminine, except *diēs*, which is generally Masculine (though sometimes Feminine in the Singular Number).

† **29.** 1. *diēī* (5th Decl.) *illīus bellī*, 'of that jolly day.'

3. *vehiculum parātum erat*, 'the carriage was prepared (*or* was ready).' Here we have an excellent example to show how the Pluperf. Pass. may sometimes be translated literally by ' was ——' : but here too it *may* be translated 'had-been prepared.'

6. *domī*, Locative ; see on § 27, l. 20. *longō diē* ; Abl. = ' by.'

9. *mans-*, from *maneō* (§ 26, l. 16), as *rīs-*, from *rīdeō*.

† **30.** 1. *post Īdūs*, 'after the Ides.' The Ides of September, as of most months of the Roman year, fell on the 13th. But—

> In March, July, October, May
> The Ides were on the fifteenth day.

2. *ēlapsī sunt*, 'are elapsed,' = ' have slipped away ' ; cp. § 1, l. 2. *āter*, 'black.' The Romans called unlucky days ' black days.'

5. *verbum* ' *valē* ' = the word ' goodbye ' ; *valē*, lit. ' be well,' or ' fare-well,' from *valeō* ; like *salvē*, ' be safe and sound,' from *salveō* (§ 22, l. 5). But *salvē* came to be used for ' how do you do ? ' and *valē* for ' good-bye ' (which = *God be with you*).

7. *valēre iubēbō* ; cp. § 23, ll. 27, 28, *custōdem valēre iubēmus*.

8. *māne* is properly an Abl. Case = ' in the morning ' ; thus *ā māne* is lit. ' from in-the-morning,' but may be translated simply ' from the morning ' ; cp. the phrase *māne erat*, lit. ' it was in-the-morning ' = ' it was morning.'

9. *diēs fēriātī*, 'holi-days,' i.e. holy days ; days of festivals (*fēriae*). *diēs profestī*, ' working-days ' ; *pro-festus* is the opposite of *festus* or *fēriātus*, ' festal.'

10, 11. An imitation of two well-known lines of Ovid [*Fasti* i. 47 and 50]. Line 11 means ' And the day, which will be a holiday, was in the morning a working-day '—a description of a half-holiday. In l. 10, *silent-ur* (Passive of *silent*, from *sileō*) almost = ' are silen*ced*.'

The metre is ' dactylic,' as in Coleridge's lines :

> ′In the hexámeterríses the foúntain's sílvery cólumn ;
> ′In the pentámeter áye fálling in mélody báck.

12. *trēs rēs*, ' three things,' ' three realities ' ; Nom. Plur. of the important Noun *rēs*, 5th Decl. (whence Engl. ' re-al ').

† **31.** 2. *septem diēs,* ' for seven days.' **Time how long** is generally expressed in Latin by the Accusative without a Preposition, and often in English without ' for.' *iam sum,* lit. ' I am now ' =' I have now been and still am ' ; cp. in English—

> ' Over the great restless ocean
> Six and twenty years *I roam,*'

where the Present Tense= ' I have been and still am roaming.'

3. *ut valēs* ? ' how do you do ?; lit. ' how well are you ? '

7. *tē salvēre iubet,* 'sends you his kind regards'; cp. § 23, l. 28 ; § 30, l. 7. *quid novī,* lit. ' anything of new '=' anything new,' ' any news ': *novī* is Gen. Sing. of the Neuter Adj. *novum,* ' a new thing.' Latin is very fond of such Genitives where we in English do not generally say ' of ' : thus in O.M., § 30, *aliquantum temporis,* ' some time,' lit. ' a lot *of time.*'

10. *illīc nātās,* ' produced (*lit.* born) there ' ; cp. ' *native* oysters.'

14. *rīdens (rīdent-),* ' laughing ' ; from *rīdeō* ; cp. *tenent-ēs,* § 27, l. 19.

15. *dē rē,* ' about the fact ' ; Abl. Sing. of *rēs,* § 30, l. 12.

17. *litterās dedit,* ' has sent letters,' lit. ' has given letters.'

18, 19. *Ministrum nostrum quī Coloniīs praeest*=' our Secretary of State for the Colonies.'

21. *Reīpublicae,* ' of the Republic,' from *rēspublica.* This is really two words, (1) *rēs,* the Noun of the 5th Decl., (2) *publica,* an Adjective agreeing with it. Both together =' commonwealth,' or ' re-public.' In declining the word, both parts must be changed : thus—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.*
Nom.	rēspublica	rēspublicae
Acc.	rempublicam	rēspublicās
Gen.	} reīpublicae	rērumpublicārum
Dat.		} rēbuspublicīs
Abl.	rēpublicā	

* The Plural means ' commonwealths ' or ' republics,' and should not be translated ' public affairs.'

32. [3rd Conjugation, Present, Active and Passive.]

1. quaesō, ' I ask ' ; often used like ' please ' (= please tell me). Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st and 2nd Conj. The 3rd is the most difficult of the Conjugations, and will require special attention.

2. *longum est* **dīcĕre,** ' it is a long story (*lit.* a long-thing) to tell ' : *dīcĕre* is the Present Infinitive of *dīcō* ; note that the *e* before the *r* is short, whereas in the 2nd Conj. it is long.

4. colunt, ' cultivate,' ' till ' ; **in-colunt** (l. 6), ' inhabit.'

6. *disputātur,* ' it is being disputed ' =' the dispute is.'

7. *ab hōc ad illum,* ' from the latter to the former.'

8. *per,* ' for,' lit. ' through '—another way of expressing time how long ; cp. on § 31, l. 2.   **mittunt-ur,** ' are being sent,' Passive of *mittunt,* ' they are sending,' from *mittō,* ' I send ' (or ' I let-go '). For the Present Tense with *iam* see on § 31, l. 2.

9. *aquam* **perdimus,** ' we waste the water ' =' we are losing time ' ; see note on the water-clock, § 24, l. 6. *Per-dō* is a Compound of *per* and *dō* : note that nearly all the Compounds of *dō* (and they are many) belong to the 3rd Conj. *Dō* itself belongs to the 1st Conj., and has the Infin. *dăre* ; but observe that the *a* is short (unlike any other Verb of the 1st Conj.). Two Compounds of *dō* which have the Infinitive *-dăre* (not *-dĕre*) are *circum-dō* and *vēnum-dō.*   **currit** *hōra,* ' time flies,' lit. ' the hour is running.'

11. ad-mittō, ' I admit ' ; lit. ' I let-go to,' ' I let in.'

12. rē vērā, Abl. of *rēs vēra,* ' a true thing ' ; hence ' in truth,' ' in reality,' ' really.' Sometimes written as one word (§ 24, l. 13).

17. ad-mittī, ' to be admitted,' ' to be let in ' ; Pres. Infin. Pass. of *admittō.* Note the peculiar way in which the Passive Infinitive is formed in this Conjugation :—

1st Conj.	..	Active	*-āre,*	Passive	*-ārī*
2nd Conj.	..	Active	*-ēre,*	Passive	*-ērī*
3rd Conj.	..	Active	*-ĕre,*	Passive	*-ī* (not *-ĕrī*).

oportet eōs admittī ; cp. § 28, l. 18, *oportet eōs vocārī Angelōs.*

18, 19. *nōs* **ad-mittimus,** ' we admit.'

20. *vestram,* ' your ' =' of you Boers.'

Third Conjugation—Present Tense.

		ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).
S.	1	mittō	mitto-r
	2	mittis	mitte-ris *
	3	mittit	mittit-ur
P.	1	mittimus	mittimu-r
	2	mittitis	mitti-minī
	3	mittunt	mittunt-ur

* Note the change of *i* into *e*, which in this Conjugation appears in the Present Tense Passive. In the 1st and 2nd Conj. it came only in the Future.

INFINITIVE ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE PASSIVE.
mittere	mittī

33. [3rd Conjugation, Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]

11. *iacēbat,* 'lay,' from *iaceō*, 2nd Conj., § 22, l. 14. **in-fluēbat** (same ending), 'it flowed in,' from *in-fluō*, 3rd Conj.

12. **dīvidēbāt-ur,** 'was divided'; cp. **dīvidit-ur** in l. 13.

15. **incolēbant-ur,** 'were inhabited,' 'used to be inhabited'; cp. § 32, l. 6.

17. *hominēs magnīs et rōbustīs membrīs,* 'people with (=of) great and sturdy limbs'; cp. *virī animō fortī,* § 2, l. 14.

18. *eōs fuisse dīcit,* 'declares them to have been '='says that they were'; cp. § 2, l. 10, and § 28, l. 16.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Tense has the same endings in the 3rd as in the 2nd Conjugation.

Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect Tense.

		ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).
S.	1	mittēbam	mittēba-r
	2	mittēbās	mittēbā-ris
	3	mittēbat	mittēbāt-ur
P.	1	mittēbāmus	mittēbāmu-r
	2	mittēbātis	mittēbā-minī
	3	mittēbant	mittēbant-ur

34. **1, 2.** *manēbat . . . insigne,* ' their honour and the badge of their ancient union remained.'   *insigne,* perhaps a flag.

4. legite, ' read ' ; Imperative Plural of *legō,* ' I read.'

11. *in-fundēbant-ur,* lit. ' were poured in ' = ' poured themselves in.'

15. *Germānicā orīgine,* like *Celticā orīgine,* § 21, l. 3.

16. The Belgae of Britain had come over from Belgium.

18. *et nōs et illī,* ' both we and they.'

19. *nōmen Germānōrum,* ' the name of Germans ' = ' the name Germans.'

Third Conjugation—Imperative Active.

S. 2	mitte
P. 2	mittite

† 35. **7.** *con-didērunt,* ' they founded,' lit. ' put together,' from *con-dō.* But *dedērunt* has been changed into *-didērunt,* and the Compound Verb has become 3rd Conj. ; cp. on § 32, l. 9 (*per-dimus* from *per-dămus*).

8. *ex quō tempore,* ' since which time ' ; cp. *ex quō,* § 25, l. 6.

13. *quā ex rē* = *ex quā rē.*   *sibi sūmunt,* ' they take to themselves,' ' they give themselves.'

14. *sē posse,* ' themselves to be able,' depending on *dīcunt.*   *Britannōs vincere,* ' to conquer the Britons,' depending on *posse* ; cp. *Britannōs vincere possumus,* ' we are able to defeat the Britons,' where *vincere* depends on *possumus.*

17. *novīs rēbus student,* ' they are bent on revolution (*lit.* new things)'; the verb *studeō* takes the Dative Case : lit. ' I am eager *for* ' = ' I am bent *on.*'

18. *quan-dam,* ' a certain ' ; Acc. Sing. Fem. of *quī-dam,* *quae-dam,* *quod-dam,* in which only the first part is declined. Note that *quī-,* *quae-,* *quod-* does not here mean ' who ' or ' which,' but rather 'something.'

23. *ob-tinēre* is a Compound of *ob* and *tenēre,* lit. ' to hold against': hence ' to re-tain,' ' to main-tain ' ; *not* ' to ob-tain,' though that word is derived from *ob-tinēre.*

24. *con-ditum,* ' founded,' agreeing with *imperium* ; it is the Passive Adjective from *con-dō,* but *dătus* has become *-dĭtus.*

G

36. [3rd Conjugation, Future, Active and Passive.]

1, 2. *magnum perīculum esse dīcit*, ' declares a great danger to exist,' or ' declares the danger to be great ' ; cp. § 28, l. 16.

4. *con-scrībere nuntiantur*, ' are reported to be enrolling.'

6. *multō plūr-ēs*, ' far more-men,' lit. ' more by much ': cp. the Abl. in *multīs annīs ante*, ' many years before,' § 28, l. 4. *Plūr-ēs* is the Plural of *plūs*.

7. *colōniae dēfendendae causā*, ' for the sake of defending the colony,' lit. ' of the colony to-be-defended ' ; compare *proeliī spectandī causā*, § 9, l. 23. Note the Adj. in *-endus, a, um* = *-andus, a, um* in the 1st Conj.

9. **dūcent**, ' shall lead ' ; from *dūcō*, § 33, l. 6.

9, 10. *prohibēbit eōs per-currere*, ' will prevent them from over-running,' lit. ' will prevent them to overrun.' The Infinitive is used as in § 26, l. 16, *prohibēbō vōs manēre*, ' I will forbid you to remain.'

12. **mittēt-ur**, ' will be sent,' from *mittō*.

14. *rōbur et aes triplex*, ' oak and triple brass,' a quotation from Horace, here applied to British ironclads, as in O.M. § 41.

15. **dēfendet**, ' will defend,' from *dēfendō*.

16. **vincēmus**, ' we shall conquer,' from *vincō*, § 35, l. 14.

19. **mittet**, ' will send.'   **scrībet**, ' he will write.'

20. **mittam**, ' I shall send.'   **leget**, ' he will read.'

21. **col-ligam**, ' I shall col-lect.'   **ex-scrībam**, ' I shall write out.'

Third Conjugation—Future Tense.

		ACTIVE.	*PASSIVE* (Rule, § 17).
S.	1	mittam	mitta-r
	2	mittēs	mittē-ris
	3	mittet	mittēt-ur
P.	1	mittēmus	mittēmu-r
	2	mittētis	mittē-minī
	3	mittent	mittent-ur

Note that the endings in this Tense are quite different from those of the Future in the 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

37. [Tenses from the **Perfect Stem Active, 3rd Conj.**]

1. *Sī valēs*, etc. 'If you are well, it is well ; I am well '—
the regular way of beginning a letter in Latin, like the English
'I hope you are quite well.'

2. *aliquid novī*, 'something new,' like *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7.
Understand *est*, 'there is.' The Greek proverb is mentioned by
the Latin writer Pliny (*Historia Naturalis*, viii. ch. 17, § 42).

4. *litterās ultimās*, 'a final letter (*or* despatch),' 'an ulti-
matum.' **mīs-ērunt**, 'they have sent,' from *mittō*.

5. in-dix-ērunt, 'they have declared,' from *in-dīcō.*
nōbīs (l. 4), 'upon us.'

7. dē-dux-erimus, 'we shall have with-drawn,' from *dē-dūcō.*
      audāciam. The Accusative is often found in Exclama-
tions without a Verb ; cp. O.M. § 2, *ō beātās fēriās !*

10. *māiōr-ēs*, 'greater,' agreeing with *cōpiās* understood.

13. *virōrum*, 'of men,' after *mīlia* ; cp. § 9, ll. 12 and 21 ;
§ 24, l. 15.

16. prō-mīs-it, 'has promised,' from *prō-mittō*, lit. 'I let-go
forth.'

20. scrips-ī, 'I have written,' from *scrībō*.

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form
the Perfect Stem Active by adding an *-s* : thus, *scrib-, scrips-*
(the *b* being turned into a *p*) ; *dīc-, dix-* (= *dics-*) ; *mitt-, mīs-*
(the *tt* being dropped before the *s*). These are like *mans-, rīs-*,
etc., in the 2nd Conjugation.

Third Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.

		PERFECT.	*PLUPERFECT.*	*FUTURE PERFECT.*
S.	1	mīs-ī	mīs-eram	mīs-erō
	2	mīs-istī	mīs-erās	mīs-eris
	3	mīs-it	mīs-erat	mīs-erit
P.	1	mīs-imus	mīs-erāmus	mīs-erimus
	2	mīs-istis	mīs-erātis	mīs-eritis
	3	mīs-ērunt	mīs-erant	mīs-erint

INFINITIVE.
mīs-isse

38. (Note.) *Īdibus*, 'on the Ides,' Abl. of Time when. A letter generally takes about eighteen days to travel from the Cape to England. *red-ditae*, Passive Adj. from *red-dō*.

2. *horrida terra* is in apposition to *Africa*. (The metre is dactylic ; see on § 30, l. 10.)

3. *poētae antīquī*, Ennius (born in the third century B.C.). **lēg-istī**, ' have you read,' from *legō*, § 34, l. 4.

4. **vīc-imus,** ' we have conquered,' from *vincō*.

5. **dēfend-imus,** ' we have defended,' from *dēfendō*. *ut*, ' so far as.'

6. The thirteenth day before the 1st of November is October 20th, if we count in the 1st of November itself. The Roman months had the same number of days in them as ours.

7. *ad*, ' at ' or ' near '—a meaning very like that of the Locative Case of Names of Towns.

9. **col-lēg-erant,** ' had collected,' from *col-ligō*, § 36, l. 21.

10. **prō-cucurr-ērunt,** ' ran forward,' ' advanced at a run,' from *prō-currō* ; cp. *currit hōra*, § 32, l. 9.

11. **pepul-ērunt,** ' drove,' from *pellō*, § 35, l. 14.

11, 12. *lēgātus Britannicus* : General Sir W. Penn Symons. *vulnerātus*, an Adjective to *lēgātus Britannicus*. Cp. *ante oculōs principis collocātus*, § 6, l. 11. Similarly in l. 15 below *situm* is an Adjective to *Saltum Cervīnum*.

14. For *Saltus Cervīnus, Castra Mariāna*, etc., see Vocab.

16. *nostrī* (Nom. Plur. Masc. of *noster*) =' our-men,' lit. ' ours.'

17. *cohortēs*, here ' battalions ' (of the British army).

19. **ascend-ērunt,** ' ascended,' from *ascendō*.

21. *ā-mīs-ērunt*, ' lost,' from *ā-mittō* (' I let-go away ').

23. *scrībe*, Imperative Singular of *scrībō* ; see § 34 (end).

24. This letter from Cape Colony (*Colōnia*, l. 23) was written on Oct. 26—five days after the battle of Elandslaagte.

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the Perfect Stem Active without any suffix : this is specially the case with stems ending in *nd*, like *dēfend-, ascend-*. Indeed *all* Verbs with stems in *nd-*, to whatever Conjugation they belong, form the Perfect Stem without any suffix (for instance, in the 2nd Conj., *respondeō*, Perf. Stem *respond-*).

Some of these Verbs, however, *prefix* a syllable to the Perfect Stem : thus *curr-*, *cucurr-* ; *pell-*, *pepul-*. This extra syllable is called the ' Reduplication ' (= doubling).

Others of these Verbs change the Stem of the Present in some other way ; thus, *lĕg-* (' read '), *lēg-* ; *col-lĭg-* (' collect '), *col-lēg-* : *vinc-*, *vīc-* (here a letter is dropped).

There are other ways in which the Perfect Stem may be formed ; instances will occur in the following sections.

39. [Perfects and Pluperfects Passive of the 3rd Conj.]

1. *S.V.B.E.E.V.* See beginning of the letter in § 37.

5. **re-ductae sunt,** ' have been led back,' from *re-dūcō*.

6. **col-lectae,** ' collected,' from *col-ligō*. *diē trīcēsimō*, ' on the 30th.' This way of expressing dates in Latin is far more convenient than the old Latin way (cp. § 37, l. 20 ; § 38, l. 6), and is generally used in Latin letters written at the present day ; for instance, letters sent by Universities and intended to be read all over the world. It will be employed in the rest of this story; except when a date falls exactly on the ' Kalends ' or ' Nones ' or ' Ides ' of a month, or on the day immediately preceding or following one of these dates (for example, l. 22 below).

7. **com-missum est,** ' was fought,' ' was engaged-in,' from *committō*, ' I let-go together.' The Passive Adj. *commissum* agrees with *proelium*.

10. *in ipsō tempore,* ' at the time itself,' ' at the very time,' ' in the nick of time.'

11. *auxiliō fuērunt,* ' were *for* an aid,' ' served *as* an aid ' ; cp. on *ūsuī erat,* § 23, l. 17.

13. *nostrōrum,* ' of our-men,' ' of ours ' ; cp. *nostrī,* § 38, l. 16. *collem,* namely Nicholson's Nek.

14. **missae erant,** ' had been sent,' from *mittō*.

17. **actī,** ' driven,' Nom. Plur. Masc. of the Passive Adjective from *agō*, ' I drive' ; agreeing with *omnēs* (= *omnēs mūlī*).

19. *sē esse vīdērunt,* ' they saw themselves to be ' ; *sē* is the Accusative before the Infinitive *esse* ; like *eum* before *reportāvisse* in § 2, l. 10.

20. *circum-datī erant,* ' they had been surrounded,' from *circum-dō*, 1st Conjugation ; see note on § 32, l. 9.

21. **co-actī sunt,** ' were driven (= compelled),' from *cōgō* = *co-agō*.

22. *Nōnīs,* ' on the Nones,' Abl. of Time when. See Vocab.

40. [**4th Conjugation, Present,** Active and Passive.]

2. **audīmus,** ' hear,' with *nōs puerī* ; from *audiō.*
veniunt, ' come,' from *veniō.*

4. **custōdiunt-ur,** ' are kept,' from *custōdiō.*

5. **audīre,** ' to hear,' Infinitive.

6. **venit,** ' comes.' The Present Tense is here used with the sense of a Past (' came '), as so often in narrative ; cp. *inquit,* ' he says ' = ' he said.'

7. **audīte,** ' hear,' Imperative Plural.   *quod = id quod,* ' that which,' ' what.'

8. *lēg-ī,* from *legō,* 3rd Conj. ; Perfect Stem formed by lengthening the vowel.

9. **custōdiunt,** ' are guarding.'

10. **mūnīre,** ' to fortify,' from *mūniō.*

12. *posu-ērunt,* from *pōnō,* ' I place,' 3rd Conj. ; Perfect Stem irregularly formed.

It will be seen that the Present Tense of Verbs of the 4th Conjugation differs from that of the 1st and 2nd Conjugations only in having an *i* instead of an *a* or an *e* in the endings; cp. § 22 (end).

Fourth Conjugation—Present Tense.

		ACTIVE.	*PASSIVE* (Rule, § 17).
S.	1	audiō	audio-r
	2	audīs	audī-ris
	3	audit	audīt-ur
P.	1	audīmus	audīmu-r
	2	audītis	audī-minī
	3	audiunt	audiunt-ur

INFINITIVE ACTIVE.	*INFINITIVE PASSIVE.*
audīre	audīrī

		IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.	*IMPERATIVE PASSIVE.*
S.	2	audī	Not yet learned
P.	2	audīte	

41. [**4th Conj.**, **Past Imperf. and Future,** Active and Passive.]

3. **veniēbant,** ' were coming,' ' kept coming,' from *veniō.*

4. *enim* =*nam* ; but it always stands *after* some other word in the sentence.

5. **audiēbāmus,** ' we heard,' ' we kept hearing ' ; on this Verb depends the Accusative with Infinitive (*Batāvōs parāre*).
mūniēbant, ' they were fortifying,' from *mūniō.*

7. **nesciēbāmus,** ' we did not know,' from *nesciō,* a Compound of *ne-,* ' not,' and *sciō,* ' I know ' (whence *scīmus,* l. 8).

10. **ad-veniet,** ' will it arrive,' from *ad-veniō* (lit. ' come to ').

12. **audiēmus,** ' shall we hear,' from *audiō.*

13. **custōdiet,** ' will guard,' from *custōdiō.*

16. *pugnābitur,* lit. ' it will be fought '=' the war will be fought.' A 3rd Person Singular of the Passive Voice is often used without any Noun in the Nominative Case to which it belongs. A Noun of similar meaning to the Verb is understood ; thus here *pugnābitur,* ' *it* will be fought,' means ' *the fight* will be fought.' The nearest thing in English to this *Passive* construction with a vague subject is the *Active* ' it rains ' = ' the rain rains ' ; ' it thundered and lightened '= ' the thunder thundered and the lightning lightened.'—Cp. § 32, l. 6.

It will be seen that the *i* of the 4th Conjugation Verbs is retained—

(1) before *ēbam, ēbās, ēbat,* etc., in the Past Imperfect Tense. Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations.

(2) before *am, ēs, et,* etc., in the Future Tense. Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.

Fourth Conjugation.

		Past Imperfect.		Future.	
		ACTIVE.	*PASSIVE* (§ 17).	*ACTIVE.*	*PASSIVE* (§ 17).
S.	1	audiēbam	audiēba-r	audiam	audia-r
	2	audiēbās	audiēbā-ris	audiēs	audiē-ris
	3	audiēbat	audiēbāt-ur	audiet	audiēt-ur
P.	1	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmu-r	audiēmus	audiēmu-r
	2	audiēbātis	audiēbā-minī	audiētis	audiē-minī
	3	audiēbant	audiēbant-ur	audient	audient-ur

42. [Tenses from the **Perfect Stem Active, 4th Conjugation.**]

4. **audīv-imus**, 'we have heard,' from *audiō*.

6. **ad-vēn-it**, 'it arrived,' from *ad-veniō*, §41, l. 10. *missa est* ; cp. *missae erant*, § 39, l. 14.

10. **audīv-ērunt**, 'heard' or 'have heard.'   *vocant-em*, 'calling,' Accusative of the Active Adjective formed from the Verb *vocō*, 'I call'; 'heard the country calling' = 'heard their country's call'; cp. § 12, ll. 20, 21.

11. **prīdiē**, 'on the day before,' may take an Accusative (*Kalendās*).

13. **custōdīv-ērunt**, 'have guarded,' from *custōdiō*, § 40, ll. 4, 9. *mūnīrī*, Infinitive, Passive of *mūnīre*, § 40, l. 10.

14. **mūnīv-ērunt**, 'they have fortified.'

16. *com-missum*, Passive Adjective from *com-mittō* (§ 39, l. 7), agreeing with *proelium* (translate 'for the battle fought in front of the town'); cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13; § 15, l. 4.

It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of most Verbs of the 4th Conjugation is formed in the same way as that of *spectō* (1st Conj.) and *deleō* (2nd Conj.); cp. *spectāv-, dēlēv-, audīv-*. The only difference is that in the 4th Conjugation the vowel before the *v* is *ī*.

But there are some Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which do not form the Perfect Stem in this way ; for instance, *veniō* forms *vēn-*, without any suffix ; cp. *legō, lēg-* (3rd Conj.).·

Note that in no Conjugation do all verbs form the Perfect Stem in the same way : even in the 1st Conjugation, which is far the simplest, we have *dō, ded-* and *stō, stet-*.

Fourth Conjugation—Tenses formed from the Perfect Stem Active.

		PERFECT.	*PLUPERFECT.*	*FUTURE PERFECT.*
S.	1	**audīv-ī**	**audīv-eram**	**audīv-erō**
	2	**audīv-istī**	**audīv-erās**	**audīv-eris**
	3	**audīv-it**	**audīv-erat**	**audīv-erit**
P.	1	**audīv-imus**	**audīv-erāmus**	**audīv-erimus**
	2	**audīv-istis**	**audīv-eratis**	**audīv-eritis**
	3	**audīv-ērunt**	**audīv-erānt**	**audīv-erint**

INFINITIVE
audīv-isse

Similarly conjugate **vēn-ī, -istī, -it,** etc.

43. [**Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in ĕre,** Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

3. **ac-cipiēs,** with *tū*, ' you will re-ceive ' ; from *ac-cipiō*, a Compound of *ad* and *capiō* (' I take to myself,' ' I ac-cept,' ' I re-ceive ').

5. *audīv-eris,* ' you will have heard,' Future Perfect of *audiō*. **cupiēbam,** ' I desired,' ' I wanted,' from *cupiō*. Note the Past Imperfect Tense, which is here used just as we might use the Past Tense in a similar passage of an English letter. In a similar way we have *scrībēbam* in l. 2 and *poteram* in l. 4.

6. *nihil litterārum* ; cp. *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7 ; *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2.

8. **faciētis,** with *tū et condiscipulī tuī*, ' will do ' ; from *faciō*. **accipiēmus,** ' we shall receive,' from *accipiō*.

9. **capimus,** with *nōs*, ' we take,' here = ' we feel,' or ' we suffer ' ; from *capiō* ; contrast *audīmus* from *audiō*.

11. **capere,** ' to take,' from *capiō* ; contrast *audīre*, from *audiō*. **cupiunt,** ' they desire,' ' they want,' from *cupiō*.

12. **capient,** ' they will take (it).' *noctēs diēsque* ; see Vocab.

13. **iaciunt,** ' they throw,' from *iaciō* (a different Verb from *iaceō*, § 22, l. 14).

14. **faciunt,** ' they make ' ; **facĕre,** ' to do ' ; both from *faciō*. **dē-ficit,** ' is running short,' from *dē-ficiō* (a Compound of *dē*, ' away,' and *faciō*).

16. **fodĕre,** ' to dig,' from *fodiō*.

17. *sē* **re-cipiunt** (a Compound of *re-*, ' back,' and *capiō*), ' they be-take themselves.'

18. **inter-ficiunt-ur,** ' are killed,' from *inter-ficiō* (lit. ' I make away with ').

It will be seen that Verbs like *capiō, cupiō, faciō* are conjugated in the Past Imperfect and Future Tenses exactly like *audiō* ; that is, according to the 4th Conjugation. In the Present Tense the 1st Person Singular and the 3rd Person Plural are also according to the 4th Conjugation ; and the other Persons of this Tense differ from the 4th Conjugation only in having a short *i* where the 4th Conjugation has a long *i*. But in the Infinitive these verbs have the endings of the 3rd Conjugation (Active, *-ĕre*, not *-īre* ; Passive, *-ī*, not *-īrī*). So too in the Imperative.

Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in -ĕre—Pres., Past Imperf., Future.

ACTIVE VOICE.

		PRESENT,	PAST IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
S.	1	capiō	capiēbam	capiam
	2	capĭs *	capiēbās	capiēs
	3	capit	capiēbat	capiet
P.	1	capĭmus *	capiēbāmus	capiēmus
	2	capĭtis *	capiēbātis	capiētis
	3	capiunt	capiēbant	capient

INFINITIVE.			IMPERATIVE.
capĕre *	S. 2		capĕ *
	P. 2		capĭte *

PASSIVE VOICE. (Rule § 17.)

		PRESENT.	PAST IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
S.	1	capio-r	capiēba-r	capia-r
	2	capĕ-ris *	capiēbā-ris	capiē-ris
	3	capit-ur	capiēbāt-ur	capiēt-ur
P.	1	capĭmu-r *	capiēbāmu-r	capiēmu-r
	2	capĭ-minī *	capiēbā-minī	capiē-minī
	3	capiunt-ur	capiēbant-ur	capient-ur

INFINITIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
capī *	S. 2	Not yet learned
	P. 2	

44. [**Perfect Stem Active of Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in -ĕre.**]

1. *hōs*, 'these' = 'the last.'

3. **ac-cēp-imus**, 'we have re-ceived,' from *ac-cipiō*.

8, 9. 'These the Dutch had settled-on, like eagles on their nests'; *in-sēderant* comes from *in-sīdō*, 3rd Conj. (which is derived from *sedeō*, 2nd Conj.).

---

* These forms are the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.

11. **fēc-ērunt,** 'made,' from *faciō*.　**cēp-ērunt,** 'took,' from *capiō*.

12. **con-iēc-ērunt,** 'threw,' from *con-iciō* (less correctly spelled *con-iiciō*), which is a Compound of *con* and *iaciō*, § 43, l. 13.

15. **in-cēp-ērunt,** 'they began,' from *in-cipiō* (lit. ' I take on ').

17. **fōd-erat,** 'had dug,' from *fodiō*, § 43, l. 16.

19. *pugnātum est,* 'it was fought ' =' a battle was fought ' ; see note on *pugnābitur*, § 41, l. 16.

20, 22. **inter-fēc-ērunt,** 'killed,' from *inter-ficiō*.　　*sē* **trā-iēc-ērunt,** ' threw themselves across ' = ' crossed ' ; *trā-* = *trans*.

23. *sē* **re-cēp-ērunt** ; cp. *sē re-cipiunt*, § 43, l. 17.

The dates of the battles referred to are Nov. 23rd (Belmont), Nov. 25th (Graspan or Enslin), Nov. 28th (Modder River).

It will be seen that *capiō, faciō, iaciō* and *fodiō* form their Perfect Stems without any suffix, and with a lengthened vowel, *cēp-, fēc-, iēc-, fōd-*. *Cupiō*, on the other hand, forms the Perf. St. *cupīv-* (like *audīv-*, from *audiō*).

† **45.**　5. *lēgātus Britannicus,* Lord Methuen.

7. *sīcut Britannīs antīquīs,* ' just-as to the ancient Britons.' Caesar tells us that the Britons were not accustomed to fight regular battles in the Roman style.

9, 10. Cp. O.M. § 37 (about the British charioteers).

11. *vīgintī tantum* ; cp. *duo tantum vel tria*, § 24, l. 14.

16. *Batāvus,* ' the Dutchman ' =' the Dutch general,' here Cronje.

18. *acceptā*, Pass. Adj., from *accipiō*, agreeing with *clāde*.

† **46.**　4. *con-spicit-ur,* ' is discerned,' from *con-spiciō*.

7. *lēgātō,* General Wauchope.

8. *iacu-ērunt*, from *iaceō* ; contrast *iēc-ērunt* from *iaciō*.

11. *perturbātī sunt,* ' were thrown into disorder ' ; Perf. Pass.
　alius super alium, ' other over other ' =' one over the other.'

13, 14. *ut poterant* ; cp. *ut poterāmus*, § 38, l. 5.

18, 19. *alius exercitus*, commanded by General Gatacre. The disaster of Stormberg occurred early on the morning of Dec. 10th.
　ad ; cp. § 38, l. 7.

21. *eōrum*, neuter, ' of those things.'

† **47.**　5. *imperātor noster* ; see § 42, ll. 10, 11.

6. *mīlia*, in apposition to *exercitus*.

13. *legiō*, here ' brigade ' (of the British army) ; see Vocab.

20. *nostrōrum* ; cp. § 39, l. 13.

48. [Present Injunctive of ' sum.']

1. *Ante paucōs diēs*, ' before a few days ' = ' a few days ago.' [*Abhinc* is not used with *diēs*.]

7. *septem et sexāgintā annōs nātus*, ' born sixty-seven years ' = ' sixty-seven years old.'

8. *ad* ; cp. § 38, l. 7.　　　　*ce-cid-it*, from *cadō*.

9. *facit*. The Present Tense is often thus used after *dum*, instead of the Past Imperfect.

11. **sit**, ' may there be.'

13. *poēta Rōmānus* : Plautus, in his play called ' The Persian ' (iv. 4, 73).

14. ' The Cape of Storms,' so called by its first discoverer in 1486—a Portuguese named Diaz.

18. *quantum*, Accus. of *quantus*, which means ' how great,' but may be translated ' as ' after *tantus* ' so great ' (l. 17).

18, f. *quod* **prō-sit**, ' may which-thing be helpful ' = ' and may it be helpful.'　The verb *prō-sum* means literally ' I am for,' ' I am on-the-side-of,' and takes the Dative Case (*reīpublicae nostrae*).

It will be seen that *sit* differs from *est* in the same way as ' be ' differs from ' is ' in English ; cp. ' it *is* so ' with ' *be* it so ' or ' so *be* it.'　*Est* and ' is ' express a **fact** ; *sit* and ' be ' express a **desire** or **command**. They are therefore very like Imperatives in meaning. We may call them ' Injunctives,' understanding by that name a form of the verb which ' enjoins ' or expresses an ' injunction ' ; for an injunction is very much the same as a command.

Injunctive forms exist in all Persons, Singular and Plural, and in several different Tenses.　The whole group of injunctive forms might be called an ' Injunctive Mood ' ; just as the whole group of imperative forms is called the ' Imperative Mood,' and the whole group of forms which state facts is called the ' Indicative (= indicating) Mood.'　But the Mood here called ' Injunctive ' is commonly called ' the Subjunctive Mood ' from a use of it explained below (§ 50).

Present Injunctive of 'sum.'

S.	1	**sim,**	*may I be*
	2	**sīs,**	*may you be*
	3	**sit,**	*may he be*
P.	1	**sīmus,**	*may we be*
	2	**sītis,**	*may you be*
	3	**sint,**	*may they be*

The Present Injunctive of *pos-sum* is formed by adding the above forms to *pos-* : thus *pos-sim*, ' may I be able,' etc.

49. [Present Injunctive of the 1st Conjugation.]

2. *nihil novī* ; cp. *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2 ; and § 43, **l. 6.**

3. *prope* is here an Adverb ; ' nearly,' ' almost.'

6. pugnēmus, ' let us fight ' ; cp. § 36, l. 15 f., *etiam atque etiam pugnābimus* (' we shall fight '). The Injunctive is rather like a Future Indicative in meaning, though there is a difference. Think what is the exact meaning of ' We'*ll* (= we will) fight and we'*ll* conquer ' ; is it more like ' we shall fight ' or ' let us fight ' ?
    vīc-erimus is a Future Perfect Indicative, ' we shall have conquered.'

7. *Deus* **det,** ' may God give (*or* grant).'   *Nē* **dēspērēmus,** ' let us not despair,' from *dēspērō*. Note that ' **not** ' with Injunctives is *nē* (instead of *nōn*).

8. festīnēmus *lentē*, ' let us hurry slowly,' ' steady, boys, steady !' ; cp. *Festīnā* (Imperative) *lentē*, ' hurry slowly,' ' not too fast !' ; O.M. § 21.   *fēcit*, ' did ' (= hurried slowly) ; the verb *faciō* is often used in Latin, like ' do ' in English, to avoid repeating a verb.

9. *poēta Rōmānus*, Ennius ; see § 38, l. 3 and l. 2.

10. *cunctandō*, ' by delaying,' the Ablative of a Noun in *-ndum* formed from a Verb ; cp. *spectandī* (Gen.), § 6, l. 4, etc.
nōbīs, ' for us ' (Dative), with *restituit*.   *rem* = *rempublicam* (§ 31, l. 21).   Fabius Maximus was called *Cunctātor*, ' the Delayer,' because he avoided fighting the enemy in pitched battles ; he thus saved the Roman Republic when it was nearly overthrown by Hannibal.

12. *ūnīus et māiōris populī* goes with *corpus*, ' the body of one and a greater nation.'

14, 15. Lines by **Dr. J. E. Sandys**, Public Orator in the University of Cambridge, on presenting the Hon. E. Barton, **of** New South Wales, for a Doctor's degree (May 10th, 1900).   *estō*, l. 15, is an Imperative of *sum*, 3rd Pers. Sing., and means ' be ' (which meaning might also be expressed by the Injunctive *sit*) ; *estō foedus*, ' be there a league,' or ' let there be a league.' *omnis* = *tōtīus*, ' of the whole.'

The metre is ' trochaic,' like that of Tennyson's *Locksley Hall* :—

" Cómrades, leáve me hére a líttle, | whíle as yét 'tis eárly mórn."

17. *cuī*, ' for which,' may here be translated ' on which ' after *occidit*. From *occidĕre*, ' to set,' comes *occidens*, ' the setting ' (properly ' the setting sun ') = ' the West.'

18, 19. *maximam laudem . . . posse*, ' judge it to be the greatest praise to themselves to be able to say.'

20, 21. Lines by Dr. Sandys (June 17, 1897) ; a translation of Rudyard Kipling's line—

" I am daughter in my mother's house, but mistress in my own."

The metre is trochaic, like the second half of the lines of *Locksley Hall*—" whíle as yét 'tis eárly mórn."

22–26. The numbers here mentioned were largely increased afterwards.

25. *nātū*, from *nātus*, 4th Decl.   See Vocab.

27. *quī* = *eī quī*, ' those who ' ; cp. *quod* = *id quod*, § 40, l. 7. In English, too, ' who ' sometimes means ' he who ' ; thus, ' Who steals my purse, steals trash ' (Shakspere, *Othello*).   The metre of the line of Horace is dactylic ; cp. on § 30, l. 10.

29. *Deus salvam* **prae-stet,** ' may God render safe ' = ' God save.'   Notice that ' God save the Queen ' may also be translated by an Imperative in Latin : *Deus salvam fac* (Imperative of *faciō*) *Rēgīnam*, lit. ' God make safe the Queen.'   The English ' save ' in ' God save ' is an Injunctive.

Present Injunctive of the First Conjugation.

S.	1.	**pugnem,**	*may I fight* or *let me fight*
	2.	**pugnēs,**	*may you fight*
	3.	**pugnet,**	*may he fight* or *let him fight*
P.	1.	**pugnēmus,**	*may we fight* or *let us fight*
	2.	**pugnētis,**	*may you fight*
	3.	**pugnent,**	*may they fight* or *let them fight*

From Active Injunctives may be formed Passives. Thus—

		ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).
S.	1	**spectem,** *may I see,* etc.	**specte-r,** *may I be seen,* etc.
	2	**spectēs**	**spectē-ris**
	3	**spectet**	**spectēt-ur**
P.	1	**spectēmus**	**spectēmu-r**
	2	**spectētis**	**spectē-minī**
	3	**spectent**	**spectent-ur**

50. [Present **Subjunctive** of *sum* and 1st Conjugation.]

4. *ut . . .* **expugnent,** 'that they may storm,' depending on *operam dant* : notice *ut* = 'that' ; hitherto we have had it only in the sense 'as' (which occurs also below, l. 14), or 'how.'
  vī, from *vīs,* an irregular Noun ; see Vocab.

5. *quō . . .* **dent,** 'on which they may deliver,' depending on *diem constituunt.* This Subordinate Clause introduced by *quō* is very like the independent sentence introduced by *Quod* in § 48, l. 18.

10. *pugnātur* ; cp. *pugnābitur,* § 41, l. 16, *pugnātum est,* § 44, l. 19.

The Present Tense in this passage (ll. 7–12) refers to past time.

11. *ut sōl* **obscūrētur,** 'that the sun is darkened,' depending on *tantus.*

12. *ut* **prōpulsent,** 'that they repel,' depending on *tam ācrem.*

13. *et (ut,* understood) *salva* **praestent,** 'and (that) they render safe.'

17. *victitant,* 'they live' ; 'they' = 'the inhabitants.'

18. *lāc,* 'milk,' which is so necessary for invalids.

19. *dēnāriīs vīgintī con-stant*, lit. ' stand at 20/– ' = ' cost 20/–.'   For the Abl. in this sense, cp. O.M. § 9, *magnō pretiō vēnumdant*.

22. *ut . . .* **explōrent-ur**, ' that what is being done among the enemy may be investigated ' : *quae = ea quae*, ' those things which ' ; cp. § 49, l. 27, and contrast § 46, l. 21, *eōrum quae apud nōs agēbantur*.

25. *ut* **spectent**, ' that (*or* in order that) they may see.'

25, 26. *ita . . . ut . . .* **applicētur**, ' in such a way that it may be brought.'   *sī* **sit**, ' if it be.'

It will be seen that the ' Subjunctives ' of this section do not differ *in form* from the ' Injunctives ' of §§ 48, 49 ; that is, the same words (*sim*, *sīs*, *sit*, etc., *pugnem*, *pugnēs*, *pugnet*, etc.) may be used either as ' Injunctives ' or as ' Subjunctives.' **The name Subjunctive is here given to an Injunctive when it stands in a Subordinate Clause.** *   But there is also a difference of meaning, which in some cases is important :

(1) Instead of ' may I,' ' may you,' ' may he,' etc., the Subjunctive is translated ' I may,' ' you may,' ' he may,' etc.

(2) In some cases the meaning ' may ' seems to disappear altogether ; see l. 11, *obscūrētur*, ' is darkened ' ; l. 12, *prōpulsent*, ' they repel ' ; l. 13, *praestent*, ' they render.'   [At first sight it is difficult to see why Subjunctives are used in these sentences at all ; they seem not to differ in meaning from Indicatives. Perhaps *applicētur* in l. 26 may help to explain the difficulty ; it means ' may be brought,' but it might be translated ' is brought.'   Similarly *ut prōpulsent* (l. 12) means properly ' as to repel,' rather than ' that they repel ' ; *ut sōl obscūrētur* (l. 11) is rather more difficult, because it is Passive, but we may translate ' as for the sun to be darkened ' ; and this ' *for* the sun *to be darkened* ' is not so very different from ' that the sun *may be darkened*.'] †

---

* The word ' Sub-junctive ' in itself means nothing more than ' sub-joining,' as though the Subjunctive Mood were the Mood of sub-joined or sub-ordinate clauses.   But it is best to understand it as short for ' Sub-injunctive ' ; that is, ' Subordinate Injunctive.'

† This attempt to explain the Subjunctive in Clauses denoting Result may be omitted, if too difficult of comprehension for the pupil. He will then have to regard the Subjunctive in such Clauses as having no special meaning, and as a merely formal substitute for the Indicative.

† **51.** 3. *imperātor novus*, Lord Roberts ; § 48, l. 2. *vincere scit*, ' knows how to conquer,' lit. ' knows to conquer.'

4–14. The Present Tense refers to past time ; cp. § 50, ll. 7–12.

4. *Calēdonēs*, =' Highland regiments.'

4, 5. *quī dent*, ' who shall deliver ' =' to deliver.'

6. *equitum Anglōrum*, etc : under General French.

6, 7. *ut equitent*, ' that they shall ride ' =' to ride.'

13. *solitō densiōrem*, ' denser than usual.' In this phrase the Ablative of the Adjective *solitus* means ' than.'

17. *Salvī sītis* ! a common form of greeting, lit. ' may you be safe-and-sound ! ' =' good day to you.'

19, 20. *ut līberēmus*, ' that (*or* in order that) we may set-free ' =' to (*or* in order to) set-free.' The proper English, however, for the phrase *oppidum obsidiōne līberāre* (lit. ' to set-free a town from siege ') will be found in the Vocab. *Deō sit grātia*, ' thanks be to God,' ' thank God.'

22, 23. *nōmine Adamantopolis* (Gen.), ' the name of A.' ; cp. *nomen Germanōrum*, § 34, l. 19. *adamanta movēre*, ' to move adamant,' means to bend a thing that is inflexible. *Adamanta* is the Greek Accusative of the Greek word *adamas* (*adamant-*).

It will be seen that Subjunctives and Injunctives may often be translated by the word ' shall ' in English ; and *ut* or *quī* followed by a Subjunctive may be conveniently translated by the Infinitive with ' to,' or ' in order to ' ; see lines 4, 5, 6, 7, 19, 20 above.

52. [**Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.**]

2. *līberātā*, agreeing with *Adamantopolī* (Ablative).

4. *nulla mora* ; that is, he is not a *Cunctātor*, like the Roman Q. Fabius Maximus, § 49, l. 8. *Noster* =' our general.'

5, 6. *quī oppugnent*, like *quī dent*, § 51, ll. 4, 5.

6–8. *dum equitēs eum itinere* **prohibeant,** ' while the cavalry shall prevent him from the march (= from marching).' *ā septentriōnibus*, ' on the North.'

8. **videat** *imperātor noster*, ' let our general see-to-it.'

9, 10. *nē . . .* **capiat,** ' that the State shall suffer no harm ' ; *nē* here =*ut nē*, ' that not ' or ' lest ' ; cp. the *nē* in § 49, l. 7, *nē dēspērēmus*. *quid dētrīmentī* ; cp. *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7. For *capiō* =' suffer,' see § 43, l. 9.

H

10. *anxia*, fem. of *anxius* ; because ' I ' is here a woman.

14. **Deus avertat,** ' may God avert.'   **prohibeat** *nē*, literally
' may he prevent that . . . not,' or ' may he prevent lest ' :
but the meaning is ' God forbid *that*.' It is a special idiom in
Latin to use *nē* instead of *ut* after *prohibeō*, as though the Sub-
ordinate Clause were a separate sentence (*Nē sit hīc diēs āter*,
' let not this day be a black **one** ').

15, 16. *Det ut* **vincāmus,** ' may he grant that we may conquer.'

16, 17. *ut salūtem* **dīcam,** ' that I send greeting,' depending
on *rogat*.   *ut* **valeās,** ' that you be-well,' depending on *cūrā*,
' take care.'   Note that the Latin Subjunctive is here translated
by an English Subjunctive, instead of by ' may,' ' let,' or ' shall.'

It will be seen that the Present Injunctives of the 2nd, 3rd and
4th Conjugation have an *a* in the ending ; whereas in the 1st
Conjugation the Present Injunctive has an *e*.

Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.

		2nd CONJ.	*3rd CONJ.*	*4th CONJ.*
		ACTIVE VOICE.		
S.	1	habeam	mittam	audiam
	2	habeās	mittās	audiās
	3	habeat	mittat	audiat
P.	1	habeāmus	mittāmus	audiāmus
	2	habeātis	mittātis	audiātis
	3	habeant	mittant	audiant

		2nd CONJ.	*3rd CONJ.*	*4th CONJ.*
		PASSIVE VOICE (Rule, § 17).		
S.	1	habea-r	mitta-r	audia-r
	2	habeā-ris	mittā-ris	audiā-ris
	3	habeāt-ur	mittāt-ur	audiāt-ur
P.	1	habeāmu-r	mittāmu-r	audiāmu-r
	2	habeā-minī	mittā-minī	audiā-minī
	3	habeant-ur	mittant-ur	audiant-ur

Verbs in *-iō* with Infinitive in *-ĕre* (like *capiō, capĕre*) form the
Present Injunctive according to the 4th Conjugation : **capiam,**
capiās, capiat, etc.

53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of ' sum.']

4. *vēnit, vīdit, vīcit,* ' came, saw and conquered.' *Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī* was what Caesar wrote in one of his despatches.

7. *in quibus suī tūtī* **essent,** ' in which his-men should be safe ' ; cp. § 52, ll. 5, 6.

8. *nē* **pos-set,** ' that he might not be able ' ; *pos-set = pot-esset.*

11–13. *ita . . . ut . . .* **ab-essent,** ' in such a way that they should be distant ' ; cp. § 50, l. 25, 26, *ita . . . ut . . . applicētur.*

15, 16. *salūtem dēspērāvit,* 'despaired-of deliverance'; see Vocab.

17. *dē-didit,* Perfect of *dē-dō* ; cp. *con-didērunt,* § 35, l. 7. *Diēs Maiūbensis,* Feb. 27th ; see § 52, l. 10.

18. *Colōnia* = Cape Colony, as in § 38, l. 23.

23. *properandō,* ' by hastening,' ' by acting rapidly ' ; cp. § 49, l. 10.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Subjunctive differs from the Present Subjunctive just as ' should ' differs from ' shall,' or ' might ' from ' may.'

Past Imperfect Subjunctive of ' sum.'

S. 1.	**essem,**	*I should be,* or *I might be*
2.	**essēs,**	*you should be,* or *you might be*
3.	**esset,**	*he should be,* or *he might be*
P. 1.	**essēmus,**	*we should be,* or *we might be*
2.	**essētis,**	*you should be,* or *you might be*
3.	**essent,**	*they should be,* or *they might be*

The Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *pos-sum* is formed by adding *-sem, -sēs, -set, -sēmus, -sētis, -sent* to *pos-*.

54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of the 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.]

2. *Fabius ille noster,* ' that Fabius of ours,' General Sir Redvers Buller.

3. **ut līberāret,** lit. ' that he might set-free ' = ' to set-free,' depending on *operam dabat* (Past Imperfect) ; cp. § 50, l. 4, *ut expugnent,* depending on *operam dat* (Present). *bis* : in the neighbourhood of Spion Kop and of Vaalkrantz.

4. *trā-iēcerat*, ' he had crossed ' ; much commoner than *sē trā-iēcerat*, ' he had thrown himself across,' § 44, l. 22.   *ut loco* **movēret**, ' that he might dislodge ' (lit. ' move from the place ').

5. *et* (*ut* understood) **facĕret**, ' and might make.'

6. *ut* **re-dūcĕret**, lit. ' that he should lead back ' =' to lead back.' *Cōgō* may also take the Infinitive in Latin, as in § 39, l. 21, *coactī sunt sē dēdere.*

9. *ut paucī facile* **prohibērent**, ' that a few men easily prevented,' depending on *tam altōs*, ' so high ' ; we might translate ' high enough for . . . to prevent.'

11, 12. *ut* . . . **tolerārent**, ' as to endure.'

13. (*ut* understood) . . . **ascendĕrent**, ' (as) to ascend.'

14. (*ut* understood) . . . **capĕrent**, ' (as) to seize.'   (*ut*) . . . **sus-tinērent**, ' (as) to sus-tain,' ' as to face.'

16. **red-didit**, Perfect of *red-dō* ; like *dē-didit, con-didit.*

16, 17. *ut omnēs hominēs* . . . **audīrent iūdicārent**que, ' so that all men heard . . . and judged.'

19. *pro-fūd-isse*, Perfect Infinitive of *pro-fundō*.   *ter*, including the first attempt at the battle of Colenso, § 47.

20. *ut* . . . **pellĕrent**, ' that they might drive,' ' to drive,' depending on *contenderant* ; cp. *viam facere* (Infin.) *contendērunt*, § 46, l. 14.

22. *ut* . . . **pugnārent**, ' that they should fight ' =' to fight,' depending on *constitu-ērunt*, ' they resolved.'   *dōnec* **vincĕrent**, ' until they should conquer.'

Past Imperfect Subjunctive.

ACTIVE VOICE.			
1st CONJ.	*2nd CONJ.*	*3rd CONJ.*	*4th CONJ.*
S. 1 spectārem	habĕrem	mittĕrem	audīrem
2 spectārēs	habĕrēs	mittĕrēs	audīrēs
3 spectāret	habĕret	mittĕret	audīret
P. 1 spectārēmus	habērēmus	mittĕrēmus	audīrēmus
2 spectārētis	habērētis	mittĕrētis	audīrētis
3 spectārent	habērent	mittĕrent	audīrent

PASSIVE VOICE (Rule, § 17).			
	1st CONJ.	*2nd CONJ.*	*3rd CONJ.*	*4th CONJ.*
S. 1	spectāre-r	habēre-r	mittĕre-r	audīre-r
2	spectārē-ris	habērē-ris	mittĕrē-ris	audīrē-ris
3	spectārēt-ur	habērēt-ur	mittĕrēt-ur	audīrēt-ur
P. 1	spectārēmu-r	habērēmu-r	mittĕrēmu-r	audīrēmu-r
2	spectārē-minī	habērē-minī	mittĕrē-minī	audīrē-minī
3	spectārent-ur	habērent-ur	mittĕrent-ur	audīrent-ur

Verbs in *-iō* with Infinitive in *-ĕre* (like *capiō, capĕre*) form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive according to the 3rd Conjugation : **capĕrem, capĕrēs, capĕret**, etc. Contrast the Present Subjunctive of these Verbs (according to the 4th Conjugation, § 52, end).

† **55.** 1, 2. *alterō et vīcēsimō*, ' 2nd and 20th ' =' 22nd.'

14. *ō diem pulchrum*, ' oh the glorious day ! ' ; cp. § 37, l. 7.

16. *lux*, ' light ' = ' hope,' ' joy.' *af-ful-s-it*, ' shone,' ' dawned,' Perfect of *af-fulgeō*, which takes the Dative (*oppidō illī*, ' upon that town ').

18. *quō . . . essēmus* ; cp. *in quibus essent*, § 53, l. 7.

21. *fabricāta*, Passive Adj. from *fabricō*, agreeing with *insignia*.

† **56.*** *Pax Britannica* ; cp. *Pax Rōmāna*, § 14.

2. *sunt ex quō* ; like § 25, ll. 5, 6, *fuerant ex quō*.

6. *Praetōriae, in ipsō capite* ; like § 25, l. 16, *Duroverni, in capite*.

7, 8. *vōs* (Accus.) *gaudēre* (Infin.), depending on *sciō*.

8–10. *nōs* (Accus.) *triumphāre* (Infin.), depending on *putātis*.

21. *dux fortissime* : Colonel (now Major-General) Baden-Powell.

23. *quod agās*, ' what (*or* whatsoever) you shall do ' ; *quod = id quod*.

26. *pugnant-ēs*, Active Adjective from *pugnō*, agreeing with *quī*.

35. *facinus ēgregium et audax*, ' an act of great gallantry.'

---

* This long letter (No. 56) is intended to be broken up into several lessons, according to convenience. As it contains no new grammatical features, some teachers may prefer to run over it rapidly.

37. A.S. = *Annō Salūtis*, ' in the year of Grace ' ; cp. l. 83.

39. Take *prō patriā pugnant-em*, ' fighting for one's country,' with *vītam exspīrāre* = ' to die.'

53. *illud*, ' that,' referring to *principātus Britannicus*, but agreeing (according to a common idiom) with *patrōcinium*, ' protectorate.'

54–58. The skeleton of this long sentence is *Videāmus nē* (55) *turpissimum sit* (57) *nōn posse* (58). Cp. § 52, ll. 8, 9, *videat . . . nē . . . capiat.* *turpissimum sit*, ' it may be a most inglorious thing.' After *nōn posse* take *obtinēre et conservāre*, and then *id quod accepimus.* The words from *ut* to *sīc* (55, 56) may be left out till the rest of the sentence has been translated : *ut* = ' as,' and *sīc*, ' so ' ; *pulcherrimum fuit*, ' it was a most glorious thing ' ; *tantam* goes with *glōriam* ; and *nōbīs* is Dative after *trādere.*

58. *Illud*, ' that,' ' the following thing,' points on to *quod*, ' that,' l. 59.

61, 62. *Batāvīs licet*, ' it is allowed to (*or* lawful for) the Dutch,' *esse*, ' to be,' *cīvibus Britannicīs*, ' British subjects.' *Licet*, like *piget* and *oportet*, can only be used in the 3rd Person.

65. *ut . . . dīcere possit*, ' that he shall be able to say ' = ' to be able to say ' ; cp. § 49, ll. 18, 19, *dīcere posse.*

67. A line of a poet of the fifth century A.D. (Claudius Rutilius Namatianus) ; metre, dactylic.

68. *quae . . . ea = ea quae.*

70–75. Lines of Claudian, a poet of the fourth century A.D. [De Consulatu Stilichonis, iii. 150 fol.], in dactylic metre.

70. *Haec est quae*, ' She it is who.'

73. *quōs = eōs quōs* ; ' has called those whom she has conquered citizens.'

74, 75. *dēbēmus quod*, ' we owe it that.'   *gens ūna*, ' one . family ' or ' one nation.'

76. *Camillus*, the great Roman statesman of the fourth century B.C., who built a temple to Concord in honour of the reconciliation of the Patricians and the Plebeians.

78. *in-scrībantur*, ' shall be inscribed.'

80, 81. Lines of Statius, a poet of the first century A.D. [Thebaid, xii. 573 f.]. *estō*, ' granted,' lit. ' be it so ' ; cp. § 49, l. 15. *ce-cid-ēre* is a poetical form of *ce-cid-ērunt*, from *cadō* ; cp. § 48, l. 8.

EXERCISES & CONVERSATIONS.

1. [Adjectives of the 3rd Declension in —, *is, e.*]

(*A*) *Conversation.*

[The questions in this and similar Conversations are supposed to be asked by the teacher, and the answers to be given by the pupil, except where the contrary is indicated.]

Ubi est villa patrui tui ?
Villa patrui mei in Cantio, inter Dubras et Rutupias, sita est.
Cur non apud patrem tuum nunc es ?
Quia pater meus in Africa Meridiana habitat.
Patruusne tuus tibi loco parentis est ?
Ita est. Inter ferias apud patruum meum sum.
Ubi eris post finem mensis Septembris ?
Post finem feriarum apud magistrum meum, ad Ventam Belgarum ero.
Ubi habitant amici tui, Marcus et Alexander ?
Amici mei prope Dubras habitant.
Quid nunc lectitas ?
Vitam Agricolae nunc lectito. Agricola dux celeber primo saeculo post Christum natum fuit.

(*B*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' the month of September ' in all Cases of the Singular ; and the Latin for ' the 1st of September ' in all Cases of the Plural.

(*C*) It is the month of-September. After the month of-September I shall be in-the house-of my schoolmaster. In [1] the month of-October I shall give many hours every-day to lessons. Before the end of the month of-December there-will-be holidays. I am now reading about Agricola, the famous [2] general of the Romans. The lives of famous generals delight me much. I like to [3] read about famous generals and about our famous island. In [1] the times of Agricola our island was not famous.

---

[1] ' Time when ' is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition, as in O.M. (Ora Maritima) § 10, *secundō saeculō,* ' in the 2nd century.'
[2] Use *celeber, celebris, celebre* for ' famous ' throughout this exercise.— In what Case must ' the famous general ' be ? Think of the meaning (' about the famous general '), and compare Preparations § 1, l. 7.
[3] Say, ' I gladly (*libenter*) read,' and so wherever ' I like to —— ' occurs in these exercises.

(*D*) In the times of Romulus, the first king [1] of the Romans, there were only ten months in the Roman year. The name of the first month was *Martius*, of the second *Aprīlis*, of the third *Māius*, of the fourth *Iūnius*, of the fifth *Quintīlis*, of the sixth *Sextīlis*, of the seventh *September*, of the eighth *Octōber*, of the ninth *November*, of the tenth *December*.

(*E*) But Numa, the second king, gave two new months to the year. He called the first *Iānuārius*,[2] and the second *Febru-ārius*. After the times of Gaius Julius Caesar the Romans used to call the seventh month *Iūlius* ; and after the times of Augustus, the first emperor,[1] they used to call the eighth month Augustus.

2. [*is, ea, id*—Singular Number.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for ' that emperor,' ' that island,' ' that name,' in all Cases of the Singular.

In the following exercises of this section translate ' he,' ' him,' ' his ' by Cases of *is* (' that-one ' =' that-man '), and ' she,' ' her,' ' her ' by Cases of *ea* (' that-one ' =' that woman ').

(*B*) Gaius Julius Caesar was the first conqueror of Britain. My uncle has told me [3] about him. Tacitus mentions his victory in the Life of Agricola. That book tells about another [4] con-queror of Britain. His name was Agricola. He was-in-command-of [5] Britain during [6] seven years.

(*C*) The Emperor Vespasianus created him general of the Roman forces in the year 78 A.D.,[7] and gave him [8] great forces.

---

[1] In what Case must ' the first king ' be ? The meaning is ' in the time *of the first king*.' Compare *C*, note 2 above.

[2] The word *Iānuārius* must agree in Case with the word ' first ' (=the first month). Similarly *Februārius*.

[3] Say ' to me ' (Dative Case).

[4] Use *alius*, which is regular in most of its Cases.

[5] Use *prae-sum*, which takes the Dative Case. See O.M. § 40 : *ubi quattuor rēgēs Britannīs prae-erant* (' were-in-command-of the Britons,' or ' were-commanders to the Britons ').

[6] Use *per*.

[7] Wherever the letters A.D. (=*Annō Dominī*) occur in these exercises say *post Christum nātum* ; and wherever the letters B.C. (=before Christ) occur, say *ante Christum nātum*. And in each case say ' in the 78th year ' (instead of ' in the year 78 '), ' in the 55th year ' (instead of ' in the year 55 '), and so forth.

[8] What Case ? Think of the meaning (' him ' here =' to him ').

His daughter was the wife of Tacitus.   Her[1] name was Julia. Tacitus loved her much, and gives her great glory in the book about Agricola.

(*D*) In the month of-August my uncle had told us (*Dat.*) about the expeditions of C. Julius Caesar against Britain.   He transported the Roman forces into Britain in the year 55 B.C. and won a victory over[2] the southern Britons.   One cause of that expedition was the expectation of booty.   In the next year Caesar prepared a second and greater expedition, and won a second victory.   But that victory too was not great.   Tacitus does not praise it.[3]

<div align="center">3. [is, ea, id—Plural Number.]</div>

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for 'those emperors,' 'those islands,' 'those names,' in all Cases of the Plural.

In the following exercises of this section translate 'they,' 'them,' 'their' by Cases of *eī, eae, ea.*

(*B*) Accordingly after those victories of C. Julius Caesar the Britons were free, as they had been before them.[4]   The midland Britons had not fought against Caesar.   Caesar did not subdue them.   The Romans had not sold their children into slavery. The father of Cunobelinus was their king in the first century B.C.

(*C*) The name of that king was Tasciovanus.   His son was Cunobelinus.   The names of those kings were famous through the whole island.   Cunobelinus was king not only of the midland Britons, but also of the southern Britons.   He had united them into one people.   Some[5] of those tribes were Celts, but some of them were Germans or Belgians.   The name of their city stands on coins of that age.

<div align="center">4. [is, ea, id—continued.]</div>

(*A*) *Conversation.*
Quis fuit pater Cunobelini ?

---

[1] Say 'of that-woman' (Genitive of *ea*).

[2] Say 'from.'

[3] 'It' means *that victory.*   What, then, must be the Gender of the Pronoun in Latin ?

[4] 'Them' means *those victories.*   What Gender, then, in Latin ?

[5] 'Some of those tribes' means 'some *tribes* of those tribes.'   What Gender, then, in Latin ?   Compare *nonnulla ex navigiis* (O.M. § 11), *nonnullī ex Britannīs*, etc.

Is rex Tasciovanus fuit.

Quis fuit frater Cunobelini ?

Ūnus ex fratribus eius Epaticcus fuit.

Unde ea nomina nobis nota sunt ?

In nummis Britannicis ea lectitare possumus.

Ubi regnabat Cunobelinus ?

In Britannia mediterranea et meridiana regnabat : caput regni eius Camulodunum erat.

Quando regnabat Cunobelinus ?

Eo tempore regnabat cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Romanorum erant. Ei primo saeculo post Christum natum imperitabant.

(*B*) During the reign of Cunobelinus Tiberius and Caligula were the Roman emperors. They thought about an expedition against our remote and unconquered[1] island. But they never entered it. Its inhabitants did not love Roman emperors, and Roman emperors did not love them. The English Channel[2] had given them freedom.

5. [*ēius* and *suus, a, um* contrasted.]

In doing the exercises in this section remember carefully the explanation of the difference between *ēius* and *suus, a, um* given in the Preparations (§ 5) ; and remember also that *ēius*, being the Genitive Case of *is, ea, id* and meaning ' of that-one,' is unchangeable, and does not agree with the word to which it belongs, as the Adjective *suus, a, um* does. Thus ' his uncle ' will be either *patruus ēius* or *patruus suus* (=' his own uncle ').

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' his uncle,' ' his aunt,' ' her uncle,' ' her aunt,' using (1) *ēius*, (2) *suus, a, um*.

(*B*) Caligula was the third emperor of the Romans. His father was Germanicus, a brave and good man. The Romans had given him that name because he had won a victory over the Germans. Germanicus had named his[3] son Gaius, but the soldiers used-to-call him Caligula. Caligula was a coward. His mind was full of folly.

(*C*) Once he not only thought about an expedition against Britain, but also prepared it. He prepared his expedition in the year 40 A.D. But when he arrived at[4] the English Channel he

---

[1] Say ' free ' or ' untouched ' (*intactus, a, um*).

[2] Say ' the Gallic Channel ' (*fretum Gallicum*), as in O.M.

[3] Think whose son is meant.

[4] Say ' arrived to (*ad*).'

was-afraid, and hurried homewards with his legions. He captured some shells, and called them the booty of the conquered ocean.

6. [*ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' the emperor himself,' ' the wife herself,' ' the town itself,' ' death itself,' in all Cases of the Singular ; and the Latin for ' the Britons themselves ' in all Cases of the Plural.

(*B*) Caractacus himself was brave, but some of the other captives feared death. The Roman emperor had carried-off the captives to Rome.[1] Caractacus did not fear the emperor himself ; he did not fear death itself. To the emperor himself he exhibited[2] a brave mind. By[3] his courage he won[4] freedom for himself and for his wife and his brothers. He was a true son of Cunobelinus himself.

7. [*ille, illa, illud.*]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' that soldier,' ' that colony,' ' that town,' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

In the exercises of this and the two following sections (8, 9) translate *that* and *those* by Cases of *ille, illa, illud*, Sing. or Plur.

(*B*) The Romans had placed a colony of veteran soldiers at Colchester.[5] That town was not any-longer[6] the capital of a British kingdom. It was a Roman colony. For the Romans used-to-call towns where soldiers lived ' colonies.'[7] That colony was the first Roman town in Britain.

(*C*) That town was not any-longer[6] dear to the Britons. For those Roman veterans had won victories over the Britons, and had sold many British captives into slavery. Those captives

---

[1] See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.

[2] Use *praestō*.

[3] ' By ' here means ' by means of ' ; how will it be translated in Latin ?

[4] Say ' he prepared (*parāvit*) freedom foɪ himself,' etc. 'For' is here (as generally) to be translated by the Dative, without a Preposition.

[5] Locative Case ; see Preparations, § 5, l. 22.

[6] ' Any-longer ' after ' not ' is *iam*.

[7] Make ' colonies ' agree in Case with ' towns.'

were the sons or the daughters of Britons. The fathers and mothers of those captives did not love those veterans. At Colchester the Romans had set-up an image of Victory. The Britons did not love that image of Victory.

8. [*ille, illa, illud*—continued.]

(*A*) *Conversation.*

Quid fuit verum nomen reginae audaci Icenorum ?
Tacitus illi reginae nomen dat Boudiccae.
Quid fuit verum nomen duci audaci Silurum ?
Tacitus illi viro nomen dat Carataco.
Ubi de illa regina et de illo duce lectitavisti ?
In historia Anglica de illis lectitavi.
Quid significat verum nomen illius reginae ?
Verum nomen illius reginae linguā Celticā *Victoriam* significat.
Unde illud tibi notum est ?
In indice verborum lectitavi.
Quid significat verum nomen filii Cunobelini ?
Significatio illius nominis mihi non nota est.
Illud nomen linguā Celticā *carum* significat.
Quid autem significat falsum illud nomen Caractaci ?
Nihil significat.
Sed cur illum virum plerumque Caractacum nominamus ?
Quia in uno ex libris manuscriptis illa forma nominis stat :
    sed error est.

(*B*) " Those [1] Roman forces," said Boadicea, " are-away in Wales. That city where the veterans live is without walls. We do not fear those veterans ; they are cowards. Listen to me, Britons ! We shall take that city by storm.[2] We shall burn the temple of that emperor Claudius, the new god [3] of the Romans."

9. [*ille, illa, illud*—continued.]

But those Roman legions hastened from Wales to London.[4] And, although they were not able to save that city from disaster, they won a great victory over the forces of Boadicea. In those legions there-were only ten thousand men.[5] And, as one writer

---

[1] For the order of words in Latin, see Preparations, § 7, l. 16.
[2] 'To take by storm' is *expugnāre.*
[3] What Case ? Preparations, § 1, l. 7.
[4] See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.
[5] Imitate the construction which occurs twice in § 9—ll. 11, 12 ('seventy thousands *of* Romans'). and ll. 20, 21.

affirms, Boadicea was-in-command-of a hundred and twenty thousand men. But, if Tacitus tells the truth,[1] those ten thousand Romans slaughtered eighty thousand Britons.

10. [*hīc, haec, hōc.*]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' this distinguished man,' ' this famous island,' ' this fine monument,' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(*B*) This victory of the Romans was the cause of death to Boadicea, the queen of the Iceni. To her[2] life was not dear after this victory of the Romans. One of the Romans too, the prefect of the camp of the second legion, put himself[3] to death after this battle. He[4] had-been-away in Wales with the second legion while Suetonius was-winning this victory. Accordingly to him[4] too life was not dear.

11. [*hīc, haec, hōc*—continued.]

Julius Agricola was one of the generals of the emperor Vespasian. The daughter of this famous man was Julia, the wife of Tacitus. Tacitus praises the father of this woman, as a just and merciful man, in the book about the life of Agricola. This book tells about ' Britain subdued.'[5] For after the times of Agricola there was a long peace in this island.

12. [*hīc, haec, hōc*—continued.]

In the seventh year of his command Agricola defeated the Caledonians, near the ' Graupian mountain.' This[6] is the name of the mountain in the Life of Agricola. We nowadays call this mountain, or these mountains, the ' Grampian ' mountain or the ' Grampian ' hills. But we are mistaken. The real name of these hills was ' the Graupian hills.' This[6] is the form of the name in the book of Tacitus.

---

[1] Say ' affirms true-things ' (neut. plur. of *vērus, a, um*).
[2] Use a Case of *haec* (' this-woman ').
[3] Use *sē*, as in § 9, l. 23.
[4] Use a Case of *hīc* (' this-man ').
[5] For ' subdued ' use the Adjective *dēbellātus, a, um*, formed from the verb *dēbellō*.
[6] Think what ' this ' means. Here it means ' this name ' ; and in the last sentence of this exercise it means ' this form.'

13. [*hĭc, haec, hōc*—continued.]

These Highlanders [1] were not cowards, as Agricola declared ; they were ready to die for [2] their country. To free their country from the Romans, and to repel [3] slavery from their wives and children, this [4] was the purpose of these Highlanders. " Drive [3] these Romans into the sea ! " said Galgacus. But the Dutch cohorts drove the Highlanders out-of the mountains. These cohorts were-serving under the Roman standards.

14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' a braver soldier,' ' a more miserable death,' ' a more beautiful building,' in all Cases of the Singular ; and the Latin for ' juster men,' ' keener defenders,' ' more savage wars,' in all Cases of the Plural.

(*B*) No soldiers were ever braver [5] than the ancient Romans. But they were cruel. They used to slaughter the unhappy barbarians and burn their cottages. And nothing is more-cruel [6] than to sell the wives and children of the enemy into slavery. But what was more dangerous to the Roman Empire than a turbulent province ? Agricola was kinder or less cruel than other Roman victors.

15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' the bravest soldier,' ' the most miserable death,' ' the most beautiful building,' in all Cases of the Singular ; and the Latin for ' the justest of all men,' ' a very merciful man,' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(*B*) The fate of the slaughtered Britons was unhappy ; but the fate of the captives was more-unhappy. For slavery is more-miserable [7] than death. To the Highlanders, as to all

---

[1] Say *Caledonians.*

[2] Translate ' for ' by *prō*, with the Ablative.

[3] The same Latin verb (meaning ' drive-off ') may be used for ' repel,' and for ' drive.'

[4] Use the Neuter Singular.

[5] Remember that the Comparative of an Adjective must agree with the word of which it is said, just like the Adjective itself. In what Gender, Number and Case must ' braver ' be ?

[6] What Gender ?

[7] Use *miser, a, um* for ' miserable,' as well as for ' unhappy.'

men, wives and children were most-dear.[1] And to all brave
men the fatherland is very-dear.[2] But of all Roman conquerors
Agricola was the justest, the kindest, the most-merciful. And
Britain had been a most-turbulent province.

(*C*) The Romans were very brave soldiers ; but they were very
cruel. C. Julius Caesar was a more cruel conqueror than Agricola,
but he was less cruel than many of the Romans. In the civil
wars he showed himself [3] a very merciful conqueror of his enemies.
He won a very famous victory over Pompeius, but he did not
put Roman captives to death after the battle. In Gaul, however,
he was most inhuman, and slaughtered a large number of the
Helvetii, the Nervii,[4] and other Gallic tribes.

16. [Present, Past Imperfect and Future Passive—1st Conjugation.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—
　　　‘ I am often praised by (*ab*) my friends,’
　　　‘ I used to be praised by my friends,’
　　　‘ I used to be delighted with this book,’
in all Persons of these tenses. (In the 2nd Person say ‘ by your
friends,’ in the 3rd Person ‘ by his friends,’ and so forth.)

(*B*) The courage of the Nervii is mentioned by Caesar in the
second book of his Gallic War. He declares them to have fought[5]
with the greatest [6] pluck. And in other books other barbarous
tribes of Gaul are praised by him. “ Our lands are-being-
devastated by the Romans,” they said ; “ our men are-being-
slaughtered ; our women and children are-being-carried-off into
slavery. Death is less miserable than slavery.”

(*C*) In Britain, too, after the victory of Suetonius Paulinus
the lands of the inhabitants were-being-devastated, and the
inhabitants themselves were-being-carried-off into slavery. At
Colchester [7] the Trinobantes used-to-be-annoyed with most-cruel
injuries [8] by the Roman veterans, and used-to-be-called cowards

---

[1] What Gender ? (*Uxor* is fem., *līberī* masc.) See § 12, l. 12.
[2] For ‘ very dear ’ use the Superlative, as for ‘ most dear ’ and
‘ dearest.’
[3] See § 14, ll. 9 and 10.
[4] What Case ?
[5] See § 2, ll. 10 and 11.
[6] Use *summus, a, um* ; cp. § 10, l. 8.
[7] Locative Case ; see Preparations, § 5, l. 22.
[8] In this and the next two sentences imitate § 7, lines 11–15.

and slaves.[1] The town itself was-being-adorned with very-beautiful Roman buildings, although it was not being strengthened with walls. In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was a Roman, not a British town. Accordingly it was not loved by the Britons.

17. [Passive Voice, continued—same Tenses.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Conjugate the Latin for—
  ' I shall be praised by my friends,'
  ' I shall be delighted with this book,'
in all Persons of the Future tense.

(*B*) After the times of Agricola the Britons took-pleasure in [2] Roman buildings and Roman baths. During the second and the third and the fourth century A.D. temples and country-houses and schools were-being-built in Britain, and the towns were-being-strengthened with very-good walls. Colchester was-being-surrounded [3] with walls during the first and the second century A.D.

(*C*) The life of the Britons was then more civilized. But liberty was gradually being forgotten.[4] Accordingly in the fourth century A.D. the Britons were less brave soldiers than they had been in the times of Cassivelaunus and Caractacus. Remains of very-fine amphitheatres and baths are-seen at the present day at Silchester and at Colchester.

(*D*) *Conversation.*
Nonne bella hodierna minus saeva sunt quam bella antiqua fuerunt ?
Minus saeva sunt.
Cur hoc affirmas ?
Bella antiqua saeviora fuerunt quam bella hodierna, quia temporibus antiquis captivi a victoribus trucidabantur vel in servitutem venumdabantur.

---

[1] In what Case must ' cowards ' and ' slaves ' be ? They must agree in Case with the Noun of which they are said (the Trinobantes).

[2] For ' to take pleasure in ' say ' to be delighted with ' throughout this exercise, and use the Past Imperfect tense (Passive) wherever the tense is Past in English.

[3] Use the Passive of *circum-dō*, ' I surround.'

[4] For ' was-being-forgotten ' say ' was-being-given to oblivion ' (§ 15, l. 17).

Verum est. Nos hodierni, igitur, clementiores sumus in bello
  quam Romani antiqui fuerunt ?

Clementiores sumus ; nam feminae liberique a nobis non trucidan-
  tur, neque in servitutem venumdantur.

Num Romani milites fortiores fuerunt quam nostri ?

Non fortiores fuerunt ; nulli milites umquam fortiores fuerunt
  quam nostri.

Nonne Romani milites fortissimi fuerunt ?

Fortissimi fuerunt ; sed nostri quoque fortissimi sunt.

Num et Romani et nostri fortissimi esse possunt ?

Possunt ; sed neque Romani fortiores fuerunt quam nostri sunt,
  neque nostri minus fortes sunt quam Romani fuerunt.

18. [Questions and Exclamations.]

(A) Conversation.

Mark. At what o'clock shall we play [1] tennis to-day ?

Antony. At 12 o'clock,[2] and perhaps at 3 o'clock and at 6 o'clock.

Alexander. Do you not sometimes play tennis before breakfast?

Antony. Yes,[3] but not often.   My uncle does not like [4] to play
  tennis before breakfast.

Mark. How-many [5] hours have you given to studies to-day ?

Antony. Not yet two hours.

Alexander. How glad I shall be [6] when it is [7] 12 o'clock !

  (B) Conversation – continued.

Mark. Do you like to read the Agricola of Tacitus ?

Antony. It is too difficult.

Mark. When shall we swim in the sea ?

Alexander. Won't it be better to swim in the sea before lunch ?

Mark. At what o'clock will your uncle arrive home ?

Antony. At 1 o'clock.

Alexander. Why don't we walk to the sea at-once ?

Antony. It is now 12 o'clock.

Mark and Alexander. Bravo, hurrah !

---

  [1] Use *operam dare* with the Dative : § 1, l. 19.
  [2] Count the hours from 6 o'clock in the morning ; 12 o'clock will
be the sixth hour. (The Latin number of the hour will always be
exactly opposite to that indicated by the hour-hand of a modern clock.'
  [3] Say ' So it is ' or ' You tell the truth ' (*vēra narrās*).
  [4] Use *libenter*, as in Ex. 1 (*C*), note 3.
  [5] *Quot* (indeclinable).
  [6] Say ' how-much I-shall-be-delighted.'
  [7] Say ' shall-be ' (Future tense).

(*C*) *Conversation.*

Quid vos pueros inter ferias maxime delectat ?

Inter ferias ludo trigonali maxime delectamur.

Quid, cum Ventae Belgarum eritis, vos maxime delectabit ?

Cum Ventae Belgarum erimus, per hiemem folle, per aestatem
    pila delectabimur.

Nonne scholis et studiis delectabimini ?

Nonnulli ex pueris scholis et libris delectabuntur, sed non omnes

Num multi ?

Fortasse non multi.

Magistrine ludis pilarum delectantur ?

Nonnulli ex magistris ludis operam dant : non sine scientia pila
    dextra laevaque captatur.

Num sine scientia follis volans geminatur et revocatur ?

Magna est scientia follem volantem geminare et revocare.

<div align="center">19. [quī, quae, quod and quis, quid—in questions.]</div>

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' Which Roman gen-
eral ? ' ' Which Roman legion ? ' ' Which Roman town ? ' in all
Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(*B*) Which Roman general was the first conqueror of Britain ?
To which general did the emperor Claudius entrust infantry
and cavalry forces for-the-sake of subduing Britain [1] ? Aulus
Plautius was the commander of the Roman forces in Britain in
the year 43 A.D. Which Roman legions were in Britain in that
year ? The Second, and the Ninth, and the Fourteenth and the
Twentieth [2] legions. From which part of Europe did the
emperor transport these four legions into Britain ? From
Germany, where they were serving.

(*C*) The general of the Second legion was Vespasianus. Who
was Vespasianus ? He had been praetor at Rome ; and after
the death of Nero the Romans created him Emperor. [3] In which
land did he win his first victories ? In Britain, where he is
reported [4] to-have-fought [5] thirty battles, to-have-taken-by-
storm twenty towns, and [6] to-have-subdued the Isle of Wight.

---

[1] Imitate the construction in § 6, l. 4 (*rēgem spectandī*), or that in
§ 9, ll. 22 and 23 (*proeliī spectandī*).

[2] Remember that *legiō* is Feminine.

[3] Compare § 2, l. 19, and Ex. 7 (*B*), note 7.

[4] Use the Passive of *narrō*.

[5] Perfect Infinitive, ending in *-isse* ; cp. § 2, l. 11.

[6] Omit this ' and ' in translating.

By whom is he said [1] to-have-won these victories ? By Suetonius, the Roman writer. Which towns did he take-by-storm ? It is not known.

20. [*quī, quae, quod*—without questioning sense.]

The words put in brackets in the following exercise are to be translated into Latin, together with the rest of each sentence. The reason for putting them in brackets is to show that they make *a complete little sentence within a larger sentence*, like one Chinese box within another. The Case of the word *quī* will be seen by thinking of the little sentence as if it were a separate sentence. Thus ' *whom* the Romans created Emperor ' is like ' *him* the Romans created Emperor ' or ' the Romans created *him* Emperor.'

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Translate the following pairs of sentences into Latin, using *is* for ' he,' and *quī* for ' who.'

Augustus (he was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.

Augustus (who was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.

Tiberius (him the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.

Tiberius (whom the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.

Caligula (his father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.

Caligula (whose father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.

Claudius (to him Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.

Claudius (to whom Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.

Nero (about him we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

Nero (about whom we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

(*B*) In the following pairs of sentences translate ' it ' by the Feminine or Neuter of *is*, and ' which ' by the Feminine or Neuter of *quī*.

Augustus did not enter the island (we call it Britain).

Augustus did not enter the island (which we call Britain).

Claudius was the conqueror of the island (we call it Britain).

Claudius was the conqueror of the island (which we call Britain).

Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in it the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in which the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

---

[1] Use the Passive of *affirmō*.

(*C*) Vespasianus (whom the Romans created Emperor after the death of Nero) was the ninth emperor of the Romans. For between Nero and Vespasianus there-were three other Emperors. What were their names ? Their names were Galba and Otho and Vitellius. Galba (who had served in Britain under Claudius together with Vespasianus) was-emperor [1] for six months in the year 69 A.D. Otho (whom the soldiers of the Germanic legions had created Emperor) was-emperor [1] for only three months, and then put himself to death. Vitellius (whom his-own soldiers murdered after he had-been-emperor [2] for eight months) was very-cowardly and very-lazy.

21. [*quī, quae, quod*—continued.] [3]

(*A*) To whom did the Emperor Vespasianus entrust the chief command [4] of the British legions after the rebellion of Boadicea ? The-man [5] (to whom Vespasian entrusted the chief command of the British legions) was Agricola (whose daughter was the beloved wife of Tacitus). The ' British legions ' were the Roman legions (which were-serving in Britain). And the Roman legions (of which Otho had-been the general) were-called the ' Germanic legions,' because they were-serving in Germany.

(*B*) After the victory of the Romans a Roman writer called the Ocean (by-which [6] the western boundaries of the Roman Empire were surrounded) ' the Roman Ocean.' In the second century A.D. Britain was a Roman province. And before the end of the fourth century the Britons (who had fought with so-great pluck against C. Julius Caesar and Aulus Plautius and Agricola) were not any-longer desirous of liberty. For the delights of the ' Roman peace ' were dearer to them than liberty.

(*C*) *Conversation.*
Quis vallum illud magnum aedificavit, quod inter **Luguvallium** et Segedunum situm erat ?

---

[1] Use the Verb *imperitō*, ' I am emperor ' ; cp. § 3, l. 21.
[2] Use the Perfect tense. What word for ' after ' ? See **Preparations**, § 2, l. 1.
[3] In this exercise it will be seen that subordinate sentences introduced by *quī, quae, quod* (and here enclosed in brackets) are sometimes necessary to the sense of the principal sentences to which they belong.
[4] See § 10, l. 9.
[5] Use *is* for ' the-man.'
[6] Use the **Ablative**, without a Preposition.

Ei qui illud vallum aedificavit nomen fuit Hadriano.

Quid fuit nomen ei qui vallum inter Clotam et Bodotriam situm
    aedificavit ?

Nomen ei fuit Antonino Pio.

Qui homines fuerunt contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit ?

Homines contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit Picti fortasse
    fuerunt.

Quid fuit nomen collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit ?

Collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit nomen fuit
    Monti Graupio.

Verane est haec forma nominis ?

Vera est ; nam haec est forma nominis quae in libro Taciti de
    vita Agricolae stat.

Cur, igitur, nos hodierni colles Grampios vocamus ?

Nomen quod nos hodierni illis collibus damus falsum est.

22. [2nd Conjugation—Present, Past Imperfect and Future—Active.

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Conjugate the Latin for—
    ' I see Richborough,'
    ' I used to see many ancient buildings,'
    ' I shall see my friends to-morrow,'
in all Persons of these tenses.

(B) Among [1] the very-beautiful Roman villas, whose founda-
tions we see [2] at-the-present-day in Britain, was the villa which
was situated in the Isle of Wight.   This villa, which the Romans
built in the first century A.D., has three parts.   In the part which
looks [2] to the West you see a vestibule and a hall and a dining-
room and a kitchen.   The vestibule and the hall have tesselated
pavements.   The pavement of the vestibule is made of [3] red
and white cubes.   The cubes of the hall are red and white and
blue and black.   In the part of the villa which looks to the
North the slaves used-to-live.[4]

(C) *Conversation.*

Nonne libenter ruinas aedificiorum antiquorum vides ?

Libenter video.

---

[1] Say ' in the number of.'

[2] For ' to see ' use *video* throughout this exercise : for ' to look ' use
specto.

[3] Say ' fabricated out-of,' *fabricātus* (*a, um*) *ex.*

[4] ' To live ' here means ' to dwell.'

Fuistine in insula Vecti ?

Numquam fui ; sed reliquias illius villae quam Romani **ibi**
　　aedificaverunt aliquando videbo, ut spero.　　Num prope
　　oram maritimam iacet ?

Temporibus Romanis prope oram maritimam iacebat ; sed nunc
　　procul a mari iacet.　Nonne tibi aliud aedificium notum
　　est, quod quondam prope mare iacebat sed nunc procul
　　abest ?

Castellum Rutupinum quondam prope mare iacebat et hodie
　　procul abest : nam temporibus antiquis totus campus, qui
　　nunc inter castellum et oram maritimam iacet, pars maris
　　erat.

Quid tibi de villa Romana in insula Vecti sita notum est ?

Vestibulum et atrium et triclinium et culinam habebat.

Quid est in vestibulo et atrio ?

Vestibulum et atrium pavimenta tessellata habent.

Num pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus ?

Nulla pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus.

23. [4th Declension and 2nd Conjugation—continued.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' a British harbour,'
' the right hand,' ' the left wing,' in all Cases of the Singular and
Plural.

(*B*) The whole villa is built in a square shape,[1] of which only
three sides have buildings.　Between the three wings lies a large
open-space.　In the northern wing there-is a well, from which
water used-to-be-provided by the slaves.　About the use of the
southern wing nothing is known.　But at [2] the eastern end of
this wing there-are the remains of baths.　You do not see these
baths in the picture which stands on page 16 [3] of this book.　A
Roman officer once used-to-live in this villa.

(*C*) In Roman times this villa lay not far from the sea.　For
the sea used-to-stretch to the place where the villa stands.　The
place now lies two or three miles [4] from the sea.　There-was
once a harbour near the villa, as the keeper affirms.　Many Roman
coins of Domitianus, the son of Vespasianus, and coins of Hadri-

---

[1] Imitate § 23, l. 15.　For ' is built' use *est* with the Passive Adj.
[2] Use *ad*.
[3] Say ' on the 16th page.'
[4] Say ' thousands of paces.'

anus, and of Antoninus Pius and of his wife Faustina, are dug-up near the villa. Many very-beautiful urns too and glass-vessels lay under the soil. The Saxons are-said[1] to-have-burnt the villa in the fifth century A.D.

24. [4th Declension—continued.]

(*A*) How many miles was Richborough Harbour distant from the Gallic port whence vessels mostly sailed to Britain ? It was distant about forty miles. The name of this Gallic port was Gessoriācum. At-the-present-day this port has[2] the name *Boulogne.* The Roman poet Lucan[3] mentions Richborough Harbour ; and the poet Juvenal[4] praises the oysters of Richborough Harbour. He declares them to have been very-good.

(*B*) There were other very-famous ports on the coast of Southern Britain in Roman times. Among[5] these ports was the port of-Lymne,[6] in which the fleet of Agricola used-to-have its special station. In the second century A.D. there-were Roman ships in all the British ports. The Romans used-to-call the Roman ships which had their station in British ports the ' British fleet.' Even[7] before Roman times ships used-to-sail from Gaul to these ports for-the-sake of commerce.

25. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Conjugate the Latin for—

 ' I have destroyed the building,'
 ' I had provided water,'
 ' I shall have held the coin in my hand,'
 ' I have had the book in my hands,'
 ' I laughed, but I answered nothing,'

in all Persons of these tenses.

(*B*) The Angles and the Saxons destroyed many very-famous Roman buildings. Among the buildings which they destroyed was the very-beautiful villa of which we see the remains in the Isle of Wight. Hengist and Horsa had many ships and many men.

---

[1] Use the Passive of *affirmō.*
[2] Say ' to this port there is.'
[3] *Lūcānus.*
[4] *Iuvenālis.*
[5] Say ' in the number of.'
[6] *Portus Lemanis.*
[7] Say ' already.'

They landed their ships in [1] the Isle of Thanet. When did they hold their course to Britain ? In the fifth century A.D. In what land had they had their home (*domum suam*) ? In Jutland.

(*C*) Why did the Britons provide a home for the Angles and Saxons in the Isle of Thanet ? Why did Hengist and Horsa hold their course to Britain ? Why did they not remain [2] in Jutland ? When the Romans recalled their legions from Britain in the fifth century A.D., the Britons were not able to drive-off their enemies, the Picts and Scots, who were-devastating the lands of northern Britain. Accordingly they implored the help of the Angles and Saxons against the Picts and Scots.

(*D*) But afterwards the unhappy Britons were sorry that [3] they had provided a home for these men in Britain. After a few years the Angles and Saxons were not any longer the friends of the Britons. They fought against the Britons, and devastated their lands. Gildas, a British writer of that age, calls the Angles and Saxons ' barbarians ' and ' savage wolves.'

26. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active—continued.]

(*A*) The Romans had taught the Britons (Accus.) the knowledge of the true God. But the Angles and Saxons used-to-worship many gods. Accordingly they destroyed the Christian churches which the Romans had built in Britain. The Britons did not rejoice that (*quod*) the Romans had not remained in Britain. For the Angles and Saxons were more cruel enemies than the Romans had been.

(*B*) When the Britons implored the help of the Romans against the Angles and Saxons, the Romans answered thus : " We are not able to lend you [4] help." The Britons were very sorry [5] that they had not forbidden the Angles and Saxons to land their ships in the Isle of Thanet.

(*C*) *Conversation.*
Quid in Castello Rutupino vidisti ?
Muros castelli vidi, et Crucem Sancti Augustini et cuniculum qui sub magnam partem areae pertinet.

---

[1] Say ' to ' ; cp. § 23, l. 3, and § 25, l. 12.
[2] The Perfect Stem of *maneō* is *mans-* ; see Latin Vocabulary.
[3] Say ' it vexed the Britons that(*quod*)' ; cp. § 23, l. 18.
[4] Say ' to provide help for you.'
[5] Say ' it vexed the Britons much ' ; cp. § 1, l. 9.

Nonne muri altiores quondam fuerunt quam nunc sunt ?

Altiores fuerunt ; nam partem murorum aetas delevit, pars alte
      sub solo iacet.

Quam longus est ille cuniculus ?

Aqua haeret.

Nonne per totum cuniculum ambulavistis ?

Ita est ; sed memoria non teneo.

Quid vidistis in cuniculo ?

Locus obscurus est ; sed cereos in manu tenuimus, quos custos
      castelli praebuerat. Puteum altum vidimus.

Cui erat usui puteus ille in cuniculo situs ?

Ex illo puteo aqua praebebatur si castellum obsidebatur.

Quando castellum obsessum est ?

De fortuna castelli nihil constat. Sed fortasse Angli et Saxones
      castellum deleverunt, postquam Romani copias suas ex
      Britannia revocaverunt.

Nonne piguit Britannos quod Anglis Saxonibusque domum in
      insula Tanati praebuerant ?

Piguit. Nam ut Romani primo saeculo post Christum natum,
      sic quinto saeculo Angli Saxonesque totam insulam vasta-
      verunt.

27. [Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Form Passive Adjectives from the following
Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide :—

accūsō [accusation]	deleō [deletion]
illustrō [illustration]	moveō [motion]
exportō [exportation]	teneō [re-tention]
parō [pre-paration]	videō [vision]
servō [pre-servation]	habeō [habit]
creō [creation]	pro-hibeō [pro-hibition]

Give the Latin for—

    The church had been built by the Christians.

    The castle has been destroyed by the Saxons.

    A conversation will have been held between us.

    The castle was destroyed in the third or fourth century A.D.

    The missionaries were not forbidden to land their ship.

    Water was provided by the keeper of the castle.

Give the Latin for ' I have been accused by you ' and ' you
have been accused by me,' according as the person speaking and
the person spoken to are (1) men, (2) women. What is the Latin

for ' I had been praised by my schoolmaster ' (said by a boy), ' I shall have been praised by my schoolmistress ' (said by a girl) ?

(*B*) The villa, of which you have not-yet seen the remains in the Isle of Wight, was built by the Romans. It was burned by the Angles and Saxons in the fifth century A.D. When was Richborough Castle destroyed ? Nothing is known about the time when this very-fine castle was destroyed. Perhaps the Saxons destroyed it.

(*C*) But if a conversation was held between the King of Kent and St. Augustine through the windows of the castle, as is affirmed by some writers, the castle had not been destroyed at the [1] time when St. Augustine with his forty attendants sailed from the Gallic port to Britain. The castle had been built two or three centuries [2] before.

28. [Fifth Declension.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ' a beautiful face,' ' that day,' ' this hope (*spēs*, 5th Decl.),' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(*B*) Gregory had been moved with pity on-account-of the very-beautiful faces of the boys whom he had seen in the forum. The boys with the beautiful faces were captives. He declared that the boys had [3] the faces of angels. " They ought to be Christians," [4] said he ; " for now they have no hope [5] of a better life." From that day Gregory was desirous of teaching [6] the knowledge of the true God in England.

29. [5th Declension—continued.]

That jolly day on which [7] we saw Richborough Castle was the

---

[1] Say ' at that (*eō*) time, when.'

[2] What Case ? See Preparations, § 20, l. 15. The Abl. of *duo* is *duōbus*, and that of *tria* is *tribus.*

[3] Say ' he declared the boys to have.'

[4] Say ' it behoves them to be Christians,' and make ' Christians ' agree in Case with ' them.'

[5] ' Hope ' is *spēs*, 5th Declension.

[6] Form a Noun in -*ndum* from the Verb *doceō* ; and remember that the vowel of the 2nd Conjugation is *e* where the 1st Conjugation has *a*.

[7] Notice the different Prepositions used in English to express ' Time when ' ; ' *on* this day,' ' *in* this year (or month or century),' ' *at* this hour.'

sixteenth day of the month of September. Within seven days the end of the holidays will have arrived. There-will-have-been fifty-four [1] days from the beginning of the holidays. On the twenty-third [2] day of the month of September I shall be in-the-house-of my schoolmaster. On the next day there-will-be the beginning of lessons.

30. *Conversation.*

Quae sunt res quibus pueri maxime delectantur ?
Feriae, vel inter scholas dies feriati.
Quibus rebus per ferias vel per dies feriatos plerumque operam
    dant ?
Ludis pilarum.
Quae sunt genera diversa pilarum ?
Unum est genus follium, alterum trigonum ; tertium est genus
    earum quae lingua Latina nominari non possunt.
Cur lingua Anglica nominari possunt, lingua Latina non possunt ?
Quia res ipsa Romanis non nota fuit.
Qua ex his rebus tu ipse maxime delectaris ?
Nihil melius est quam follis.
Sed his rebus tum quoque operam das cum apud magistrum
    tuum es. Nonne verum est ? Responde mihi.
Verum est ; sed nonnullis diebus scholae sunt a mane usque ad
    vesperum.

31. *A Portrait of Boadicea.*

Dio Cassius, the historian,[3] declares Boadicea to have been a woman of [4] great stature, with a warlike face, blue eyes, and [5] long and yellow hair. She had [6] an embroidered [7] tunic, over which there-was a cloak. In her hand she held a spear. Thus she stood in her chariot, riding among the ranks of her Britons. See the picture which stands on the 11th page of this book.

---

[1] Say ‘ four and fifty.’
[2] Say ‘ third and twentieth.’
[3] Say ‘ the writer of things.’
[4] Use the Ablative Case.
[5] Omit this ‘ and ’ in translating.
[6] Use the Past Imperfect tense for this and all the other Past tenses which follow in this exercise.
[7] For this and other new words in this exercise, see the English-Latin Vocabulary.

It is not strange [1] that the Britons loved and feared their queen.
The name of Boudicca itself signified in [2] the Celtic tongue nothing
else than Victoria.[3]

A Grammatical Lesson in Latin.

Quot sunt declinationes nominum Latinorum ? Latine mihi
   responde.

Quinque sunt declinationes, prima, secunda, tertia, quarta,
   quinta.

Quot coniugationes verborum Latinorum tibi notae sunt ?

Duae coniugationes, prima et secunda.

Suntne aliae coniugationes verborum ?

Aliae sunt coniugationes, sed non aliae declinationes.

Recte : cuius declinationis est nomen *miles* ?

Tertiae declinationis.

Recte.   Declina mihi hoc nomen in Numero Singulari.

Miles, militem, militis, militi, cum milite.

Recte.   Quae sunt terminationes duarum illarum coniugationum?

Terminationes primae Personae Numeri Singularis sunt *o* et *eo*.

Optime   respondisti.   Coniuga mihi tempus Praesens verbi
   video.

Video, vides, videt, videmus, videtis, vident.

Tempus Praeteritum-imperfectum coniuga.

Videram, videras ――――

Non recte.   In omnibus coniugationibus tempora Praeterita-
   imperfecta terminationes *bam, bas, bat* habent.

Videbam, videbas, videbat, cetera.

Recte : cur terminationes *eram, eras* dedisti ?

Fortasse quia verbum *sum* in tempore Praeterito-imperfecto
   eram, eras, erat habet.

Quae sunt nomina aliorum temporum ?

Futurum, Perfectum ?

Recte ; et Plusquamperfectum et Perfectum Futuri.

32. [3rd Conjugation—Present Active and Passive.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—
   ' I often write letters in the morning,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi, et

----

[1] Say ' a strange-thing,' cp. § 6, l. 13 ; § 7, l. 9 ; for ' that ' see § 23,
l. 18 ; § 31, l. 14.

[2] Use the Ablative without a Preposition.

[3] Cp. § 24, ll. 18–20.

'I am sometimes sent to Richborough,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.

(B) " Why do you not admit the Outlanders to the citizen-
ship ? " So our Minister writes. The Boers answer thus : " We
do not admit them because they will not be loyal [1] citizens of
our Republic. We are not able to admit a multitude of new
citizens into our Republic." The Boers say that the Outlanders
are too many.[2] In the African Republic, which is situated across
the River Vaal, the number of the Boers is smaller than of the
Outlanders.

33. [3rd Conjugation—Past Imperfect Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (A)
cum tempore Praeterito-Imperfecto pro Praesenti.

(B) The Romans used-to-admit foreigners to the citizenship.
In the first century B.C. there-was a Spaniard, to whom Gnaeus
Pompeius Magnus, a very-famous Roman general, gave the
Roman citizenship. After that time he was called Lucius Cor-
nelius Balbus. While Caesar was-leading [3] his forces against
the Celtic and Germanic tribes which inhabited [4] Gaul, Balbus
was with him. Balbus used-to-write letters for [5] Caesar about
public affairs.[6] These letters used-to-be-sent to Cicero and other
very-distinguished men.

34. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect—continued.]

(A) The names Gaius and Balbus are very-famous ; for they
stand in a book which used-to-be-read by all English boys.
The book says that Gaius and Balbus built a wall.[7] But who
was Gaius, and who was Balbus ? Lucius Cornelius Balbus was
a friend of Gaius Julius Caesar.

---

[1] Say ' faithful ' (*fīdus, a, um*).
[2] Use the Accusative with the Infinitive (' the Outlanders to be too
many '), just as if ' declare ' had been used instead of ' say ' (*dīcō*) ;
and make ' many ' agree with ' the Outlanders.'
[3] Use *dūcō* (3rd Conjugation).
[4] Use *incolō* (3rd Conjugation).
[5] ' For ' here means ' instead of ' ; therefore translate it by *prō* (with
the Ablative).
[6] Say ' about the Republic ' (Singular Number, cf. Note on p. 84.)
[7] Say ' Gaius and Balbus (Accus.) to have built (Perfect Infin.)
a wall.'

(*B*) But this Balbus and this Gaius never built a wall, as is-said in the very-famous book which we have mentioned. And Balbus is a surname ; but Gaius is a fore-name. The Romans used-not-to-say " Balbus and Gaius built a wall," just as we [1] in the English language do not say " *John* [2] and *Jones* [2] built a wall."

35. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect, continued.]

(*A*) In the times of Caesar the Rhine used-to-divide Gaul from Germany. Read the first chapter of the first book of the Gallic War, where Caesar says this.[3] He also says this : [3] " The Germans inhabit the lands which lie across the Rhine." The region which used-to-be-inhabited by the Belgae was a part of Gaul. For Gaul used-to-be-divided into three parts, of which one used-to-be-called Belgium.

(*B*) But even [4] before the times of Caesar many German tribes used-to-inhabit lands which lay in Gaul. Caesar himself says that [5] German tribes had migrated across the Rhine. Thus [6] in very-ancient times a part of Gaul used-to-be-inhabited by Germans. The Belgians themselves were-said [7] to be of Germanic origin.

(*C*) At-the-present-day the Rhine does not divide France from Germany ; for some of the provinces which lie across the Rhine are part of Germany. In the year 1870 [8] there-was a war between the French and the Germans about this matter.[9] Before the war the French used-to-say that these provinces were theirs ; [10] and in-fact [11] the people [12] by whom these provinces were-inhabited were mostly French.

---

[1] Use the Pronoun in Latin, because ' we ' is emphatic in the English.

[2] Use the English names, as they stand.

[3] Use the Neuter Singular (' this-thing ').

[4] Say ' already.'

[5] Use the Accusative with Infinitive. So in all future passages where the English has ' that ' depending on the verb ' to say.'

[6] Use *itaque*.

[7] Use the Past Imperfect tense.

[8] Say ' in the year thousandth eight-hundredth seventieth ' ; cp. § 25, l. 8.

[9] Use *rēs* for ' matter.'

[10] Use *suus, a, um,* and make it agree with ' provinces.'

[11] *rē vērā.*

[12] Say ' men ' (*hominēs*).

36. [3rd Conjugation, Future Active and Passive.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (*A*) cum tempore Futuro pro Praesenti.

(*B*) I shall like to read the letters which my father or my mother will send me [1] from South Africa, if there is [2] war.　Will my father himself serve against the enemy ?　If my father is-sent [2] to [3] Natal, or into the Dutch Republics of South Africa, for the sake of fighting, my mother will write to me.

(*C*) The British forces will not be driven into the sea by the Boers, even if they are fewer in number than the enemy.　They will defend our Colonies.　If the Boers overrun [2] Natal, as our master says, greater forces will be sent from Britain.　If these do [2] not conquer the enemy, we shall enrol other forces.　Some day, perhaps, the letters which will be sent me [1] about this war will be read by other boys.

(*C*) *Conversation.*

Quid mihi de Republica Africana Batavorum dicere potes ?
Respublica Africana Batavorum trans Vahalem flumen sita est.
Cur illam partem Africae Meridianae incolunt coloni illi Batavi ?
Coloni Batavi, qui Rempublicam Africanam nunc incolunt,
　　Coloniam nostram Anglicam in Africa Meridiana sitam
　　quondam incolebant.
Cur ex Colonia nostra Africana migraverunt ?
Quia magna discordia fuit inter nos et colonos Batavos.
Unde nata est illa discordia ?
Haeret aqua.
Ego tibi dicam : ex manumissione servorum nata est.　Sed unde
　　nata est discordia quae nunc est inter nos et illos ?
Ex peregrinis illis nata est, qui Rempublicam Africanam incolunt.
Quid est nomen urbi quam peregrini incolunt ?
Nomen ei urbi est *Johannesburg*.
Ita est ; Urbs Aurea interdum vocatur, quia multum auri sub
　　solo est.　Quid est nomen Ministro nostro qui Coloniis
　　praeest ?
Cognomen ei est *Chamberlain* : praenomen ei est Iosepho.
Nonne cognomen illud Latine reddere potes ?
Non possum.

---

[1] Say ' to me ' (either the Dative or *ad* with the Accusative).
[2] Use the Future tense.
[3] Say ' into.'

Forma Latina illius cognominis Camerarius est ; nam saeculo sexto decimo post Christum natum vir doctus [1] fuit cui nomen Latinum erat Camerario ; atque parentibus eius nomen fuerat quod lingua Germanica nihil aliud significabat quam *Chamberlain.*

37. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with *s.*]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—
 ' I have written a letter,'
 ' I had said something new,'
 ' I shall not have declared war,'
in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(*B*) *A Letter from Antony to his Mother.*

MY DEAREST MOTHER,[2]
 I hope you are quite well.[3] My uncle has written me [4] a letter in which he says strange things. " The African Republics," he says,[5] " have declared war upon us." Please [6] write to me soon, unless you have already written. Have the Boers sent an army against our Colony ? Will my father serve against the enemy ? Perhaps before the arrival of this letter we shall have led our forces against the enemy. I write on the 12th day of the month of October. Farewell.

38. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any suffix.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

 ' I have read the letter,'
 ' I had defended the land,'
 ' I shall have conquered the enemy,'
in omnibus personis horum temporum.

---

[1] Joachim Camerarius ; the name of his family had once been *Kammermeister,* which means ' chamberlain.'
[2] Say ' Antony sends greeting to his dearest mother.'
[3] This may be translated literally (' I hope you to be well '), or the beginning of the letter in § 37 may be imitated.
[4] Say ' to me ' (either the Dative or *ad* with the Accusative).
[5] Use *inquit.*
[6] Use *amābō tē* (lit. ' I shall love you '), and put it after ' write to me soon,' as in O.M. § 21, *monstrā nōbīs, amābō tē.*

(*B*) My mother wrote to me on the 11th day of the month of October. She told [1] me that the Dutch Republics of South Africa had declared war upon us. How glad I was to read [2] the letter which my father sent after the victories of our forces ! You, most-brave Irish battalions, ascended Talana Hill and defeated [3] the enemy. And you, English and Scottish battalions, charged most-bravely at Elandslaagte.[4] The Boers have not yet driven the Britons into the sea.

39. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Form Passive Adjectives from the following Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide :—

scrībō [de-scription]	mittō [mission]
con-scrībō [con-scription]	agō [action]
re-dūcō [re-duction]	dēfendō [defence, defensive]
col-ligō [col-lection]	vincō [victory]

Give all the Persons of the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive of *dūcō*, *mittō* and *vincō*; and the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur. of the same tenses of *scrībō*.

(*B*) Three letters have been sent to me from South Africa about the war. Of these letters, two [5] have been written-out by me into my note-book. Three battles have been fought.[6] In two [5] of these battles the Boers have been defeated ; but in one battle we [7] have been defeated. Nevertheless the British flag has been bravely defended. New forces have already been enrolled. They will soon have been sent to [8] South Africa. The forces of the enemy have been collected around Ladysmith.

40. [4th Conjugation—Present tense, Active and Passive.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—
   ' I am guarding the camp,'
   ' I am coming to the camp,'

---

[1] Use *dīcō* for ' tell,' and note that ' me '=' to me.'
[2] Say ' How gladly I read ' (Perfect tense).
[3] Use *vincō* here and in all future exercises for ' defeat.'
[4] Imitate § 38, ll. 13, 14.
[5] What Gender ? (' two '=' two letters '). For declension of *duo, duae, duo*, see Latin-English Vocabulary.
[6] Say ' engaged-in ' (Pass. of *committō*).
[7] Use the Pronoun in Latin, because ' we ' is emphatic.
[8] *in* with the Accusative.

in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi ; et
   'I am being guarded by our soldiers,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.

(*B*) I hear that [1] our men are-guarding Ladysmith, and that [1] the Boers are besieging the town.   Ladysmith is not a fortified [2] town ; it has no walls.   Accordingly it will not be easy to guard the place.   But a very-great store [3] of arms and of food is kept [4] in the town.   " Do you hear," says our master, " that the Boers have placed [5] their biggest guns on all the hills by which Lady-smith is surrounded ? "   But new forces are-coming from Britain.

41. [4th Conjugation—Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—
   ' I was guarding the camp,'
   ' I shall guard the camp,'
   ' I was being guarded by our soldiers,'
   ' I shall be guarded by our soldiers,'
in omnibus personis temporum Praeteriti-imperfecti et Futuri ; et
   ' I shall arrive home (*domum*),'
in omnibus personis temporis Futuri ; et
   ' I know that [6] there is danger of war,'
in omnibus personis temporis Praesentis.

(*B*) In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was not a fortified town.   The Roman veterans who were-guarding the place did not know that [6] there was danger of a British rebellion.   " The Britons," they said, " will never come for the sake of attacking Colchester."   But the Britons were-coming with a very-great army.   Why were we not fortifying Ladysmith before the war ?

---

[1] ' I hear that . . .' is expressed in Latin by the same construction as ' I say (*or* declare) that . . .'

[2] Use the Passive Adjective *mūnītus, a, um.*

[3] Use *cōpia* ; for ' very-great ' see § 20, l. 16.

[4] Use *custōdiō.*

[5] Form the Perfect Infinitive by adding *-isse* to the Perfect Stem Active of *pōnō,* which is *posu-* ; cp. § 40, l. 12.

[6] ' I know that . . .' is expressed in Latin by the same construction as ' I say (*or* declare) that ' and ' I hear that.'   In English, too, we may say ' I know him to be a friend,' as well as ' I know that he is a friend.'

When will our new forces arrive [1] in South Africa ?   We shall soon know.

42. [4th Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—
  ' I have heard my country's call ' (imitate § 42, l. 10),
  ' I have arrived home (*domum*),'
  ' I came, I saw, I conquered,'
in omnibus personis temporis Perfecti.

(B) Have you heard the very-famous song about the fifty thousand horse and foot [2] who are sailing to the Cape of Good Hope ?   " The British soldier," it says,[3] " has heard his country's call."   I have heard and I have sung this song.   We have also heard the song about the Soldiers of the Queen.   Some of these men have already arrived in South Africa.   At the [4] time when they sailed from our southern port they had not heard the news about Ladysmith.   When they have arrived [5] at the Cape of Good Hope, they will be sent to [6] Natal.

(B) *Conversation.*   (The first speaker is the pupil.)
Num quid novi hodie ex Africa Meridiana audivisti ?
Nihil novi audivi.   Nostri Castra Mariana ut possunt custodiunt ;
    sed post proelium illud quod die tricesimo mensis Octobris
    pugnatum est nihil novi est.
Quot sunt nostri qui ibi obsidentur ?
Nescio : sed audio eos circiter duodecim milia esse numero.
Quot sunt Batavi qui eos obsident ?
Nemo scit ; sed numero nostros multum superant.
Sed tum cum quinquaginta illa milia virorum, quos nuper emis-
    imus, in Africam Meridianam advenerint, numero nos non
    superabunt, ut spero.
Nescio ; nam Batavi sexaginta milia virorum habere dicuntur.

---

[1] Use *ad-veniō* ; and for ' in ' say ' into,' as in § 41, l. 10.   Note that *ad-veniō* takes the same construction as *veniō* : the Romans spoke of arriving *to* a place, not of arriving *at* it.

[2] Say ' of cavalry and infantry forces,' and make ' who ' agree in Gender with ' forces.'

[3] Use *inquit*.

[4] Say ' at that (*eō*) time, when.'

[5] Say ' shall have arrived ' (Future Perfect tense).

[6] Say ' into.'

Quot sunt viri in illa cohorte quae heri ad Promunturium Spei
    Bonae advenit ?
Circiter octingenti sunt numero.
Quando ceterae cohortes advenient ?
Intra hunc mensem, ut speramus.   Sed non statim cum Batavis
    pugnabitur ;   nam ducenta fere milia passuum sunt inter
    Portum Natalem et Castra Mariana.   Atque cum exercitus
    contra hostem mittitur, non universi milites pugnando
    operam dant ;   maximae parti eorum necesse est vias custo-
    dire, castella munire, pontes defendere, ceteris rebus operam
    dare.

43. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—Present, Past Imperfect, and
                    Future, Active and Passive.]

   (*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—
        ' I desire to take the camp,'
        ' I desired to take the camp,'
        ' I shall desire to arrive home,'
in omnibus personis temporum Praesentis, Praeteriti-imperfecti,
Futuri Activi.

   Redde Latine—' What are you doing ? '   ' What were you
doing ? '   ' What will you do ? '   ' Many letters are (were, will be)
received by me every-day.'

   (*B*) *A Letter from Antony to his father.*

MY DEAREST FATHER,[1]

   The letter which you wrote on November 5th [2] arrived yester-
day.   I feel [3] very-great grief on-account-of the reverse of [4]
which you speak.   We read in the newspapers that [5] the Boers
greatly desire to take Ladysmith.   When shall I receive another [6]
letter from you ?   I desire to hear more [7] about Ladysmith.
What are you yourself doing ?   What will you and my mother

---

   [1] Say ' Antony to his dearest father greeting.'
   [2] Say ' on the Nones of November.'
   [3] Use *capiō*, as in § 43, l. 9.
   [4] ' of ' here means ' about.'
   [5] ' I read that . . .' is expressed like ' I say that,' ' I hear that,'
' I know that.'   This sentence, then, will have two Infinitives in it,
the second depending on the first.
   [6] Use *alter, altera, alterum.*
   [7] Say ' more things ' (*plūra*), cp. § 32, l. 12.

do, if the Boers overrun [1] our Colony ?   I write this letter on the 24th of November.   Farewell.

44. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—Perfect Stems.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

' I have received a letter from (*ex*) South Africa,'
' I have made an attack on (*in*) the enemy (Accus.),'
' I had put (*coniēceram*) the enemy to flight,'
' I shall have dug a pit,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(*B*) We had received the news about the siege of Kimberley and of Mafeking in the month of October.   The Boers began to besiege Mafeking on the 13th of October.   A few days after [2] they had surrounded Kimberley with their forces, and had dug trenches round the town.   On October 16th they began to bombard [3] Mafeking.   They did not bombard Kimberley before November 8th.   Although the Boers have thrown an immense number of missiles into these towns, they have not killed many of our men.   On October 27th our men made a very-brave attack upon the Boers who were besieging Mafeking, and took one of the trenches.

45. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

The trenches which the Boers had dug round Mafeking were only a mile distant [4] from the town.   And they had brought-up very-big guns for the sake of causing [5] panic to the inhabitants. But the British Colonel who is-in-command-of the town does not fear the Boers.   When the Dutchman bade him surrender the town for the sake of avoiding slaughter, he answered, laughing,[6] " Please,[7] when will the slaughter begin ? " [8]

---

[1] Use the Future Perfect tense.
[2] Imitate § 20, l. 15 (*paucīs annīs ante*) ; ' after ' will be *post*.
[3] Say ' to throw missiles into.'
[4] Imitate § 45, l. 12.
[5] The Nouns in -*ndum* formed from Verbs in *iō* end in -*iendum* ; thus *faciendum*, ' the making,' ' the causing.'
[6] The Active Adjectives formed from Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in -*ens*.
[7] Use *quaesō*, and put it after the other verb, as in § 32, l. 1.
[8] Use the Passive (' will be begun ').

46. [Verbs in *iŏ* with Infinitive in *ere*--continued.]

Afterwards he wrote to the Boers in [1] the following fashion :
" This town cannot be taken[2] by sitting-down [3] and looking at it.[4]
Why do you not come and take it ?   But you cannot.   Go [5] home,
therefore, to your farms.   You will be sorry some day, if you do
not listen[6] to me.   For we shall soon have taken the capitals of
your Republics."   On October 21st he sent this message to our
commander-in-chief : " All is well.[7]   They have bombarded [8] the
town for four hours.   We have lost one dog."

47. [Verbs in *iŏ* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

(*A*) What is the name of our most merry Colonel ?   The first
letters of his name are B.P.   On holidays,[9] when the Boers do not
bombard the town, our men play cricket and football.[10]   When
the Boers begin to bombard, a signal is given by a bell, and all
the inhabitants of the town, men, women and children, retire [11]
into pits, which they have dug in the earth.   There are only about
nine hundred soldiers in the town, which is besieged by about
five thousand Boers.   Sometimes our men make very-brave
attacks upon the Boers and drive them out of their trenches.

(*B*) *Conversation.* (The first speaker is the pupil.)
Num quid novi est hodie ex Africa Meridiana ?
Nonne audivisti de tertia clade, quam nostri acceperunt ?
Non audivi.   Dic mihi, quaeso.   Ubi accepta est ?
Hic mensis nobis ater fuit.   Non plus quam sex dies sunt ex
    quo duae clades nuntiatae sunt ; hodie de tertia et fortasse
    maiore clade ex Terra Natali nuntium accepimus.   Sed de
    hac re non libenter dico.   In actis diurnis legere potes.
Num nostri non bene pugnaverunt ?

---

[1] Imitate § 13, ll. 1, 2.
[2] Use *capiŏ* (Passive Infinitive).
[3] Use the Ablative of the Noun in *-ndum* formed from *sedeō*.
[4] Say ' by looking ' (without ' at it ').   Similarly in the next sentence
omit ' it.'
[5] Say ' betake yourselves ' (' yourselves ' = *vōs*).
[6] Say ' shall not have listened ' (Future Perfect).
[7] Say ' all-things have themselves well ' ; cp. § 22, 1. 7.
[8] See Ex. 44 (*B*), note 3.
[9] Use the Ablative of *diēs fēriātī*, without a Preposition.
[10] Say ' give attention to the ball and the football ' ; or ' play (use
lūdō, 3rd Conj.) with the ball and the football.'
[11] Say ' betake themselves.'

Impetus fortissimos per totum diem in hostes fecerunt ; sed
   frustra. Tugelam non traiecerunt. Plus quam mille viros
   amisimus.
Magnum capio dolorem.
Nondum omnia audivisti. Batavi decem vel undecim ex tor-
   mentis nostris ceperunt.
Quomodo ceperunt ?
Fossas in ripis Tugelae foderant, unde imbrem mortiferum
   missilium in ordines nostros coniecerunt. Itaque tormenta
   defensoribus nudata sunt.
Nonne nostri tormenta receperunt ?
Duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum summa virtute recepit ;
   sed cetera non recepimus.
Num Castra Mariana iam obsidione liberari poterunt ?
Nescio.

48. [Present Injunctive of *sum*.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

   ' May I be victorious (*victor*, Plur. *victōrēs*),
   ' May I be helpful (*prōsim*) to the republic,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(*B*) During the siege the Colonel does not take much sleep.[1]
In the silence of the night he often walks round the town or in
the veldt, for the sake of exploring.[2] He has written these
verses—

> If we go forward,[3] we die ;[4]
> If we go backward,[5] we die ;
> Better go forward and die.[6]

May it be well with [7] you, most-brave Colonel !   May it be well
with [7] the little town, which you are defending !   May you be
victorious ![8]   May we all be victorious with you !

---

[1] Say ' much of sleep,' like *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2.
[2] Use the Noun in -*ndum* formed from the Verb *explōrō*.
[3] For ' go forward ' say ' advance ' (*prōcurrō*).   Use the Present
tense, because ' if ' means ' if at any time ' or ' whenever.'
[4] Say ' we are killed ' (Passive of *interficiō*).
[5] For ' go back ' say ' retire ' (' take ourselves back ' : *nōs recipimus*)
[6] Say ' It is better to advance and to be killed ' ; cp. § 18, ll. 14, 15.
[7] Use the Dative Case (' to you ' instead of ' with you ').
[8] Say ' a conqueror,' ' a victor.'

49. [Present Injunctive of the 1st Conjugation.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

'May I save (*salvum praestem*) the army,'
'Let me not (*nē*) fear,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(*B*) May our army soon raise the siege of Mafeking[1] and Kimberley and Ladysmith! May the brave defenders of these towns endure the siege until help arrives![2] Let us not fear! Let us await the victory of our men with a calm mind! And in distant lands, where Britannia's sons have founded great colonies, let all men with one voice exclaim, " Rule Britannia![3] Long may our Empire stand! Long may our Queen reign!"

50. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

' I am marching (*iter faciō*) in order that I may save the town,'
' I shall try (*operam dabō*) to storm the town,'
'I am letting-out the gas, in-such-a-way (*ita*) that the balloon may be brought-to-land,'
in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subiunctivi, nisi quod in tertia sententia una tantum persona Subiunctivi dici potest.

(*B*) A British army is marching in-order-that Kimberley may be saved.[4] And another British army is fighting on[5] the Tugela in-order-that the siege of Ladysmith may be raised.[6] The Dutch general who is besieging Kimberley says " Surrender the town, in order that the slaughter of women and children may be avoided." But our Colonel, who is defending the town, says " Come and take it,[7] if you can." The Dutch general, however, is not trying to[8] storm the town. His plan is to starve out the inhabitants.[9]

---

[1] Say ' free Mafeking from siege,' as in § 44, l. 6.
[2] Say ' shall have arrived ' (Future Perfect of *adveniō*).
[3] Say ' let Britannia be mistress of the waves.'
[4] Use *salvus, a, um* for ' saved.'
[5] Use *ad* with the Accusative.
[6] Say ' in-order-that Ladysmith may-be-freed from siege.'
[7] Use the Imperative for ' come ' and ' take ' ; and omit ' it.'
[8] Use *operam dō ut*, as in § 50, ll. 3 and 4.
[9] Say ' to conquer (Infinitive) the inhabitants by want.'

51. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation—continued.]

(*A*) Meanwhile our men who are defending Kimberley are manufacturing a cannon in-order-that they may be able [1] to throw missiles against the big cannons of the Boers. Food is so dear that eggs cost twenty-five shillings a dozen,[2] and a fowl costs twenty shillings. So great is the want that the inhabitants are living on horse-flesh. Sometimes they climb-up onto [3] towers or other high buildings of the town in order that they may watch [4] the veldt. For they hope that help is-at-hand.[5] Sometimes they see a cloud-of-dust, sometimes the balloon of a British army.

(*B*) *Conversation.* (The speakers are two boys—Antony and Mark.)

Salvus sis, Marce ! Legistine de Adamantopoli ? .

Num obsidione liberata est ?

Obsidione liberata est.

Euge, optime ! Quis liberavit ?

Dux noster cui cognomen est *French*.

Quomodo liberavit ?

Nonne scis eum iam multos dies ei rei operam dedisse ? Nonne scis eum virum esse qui hostes superet cum ei rei operam det ?

Scio.

Is vir vincere scit.

Prosit ei ! Opportune accidit quod non obsidetur.

Non obsidetur quia ex oppido ad Tugelam sito se recipere sciebat antequam Batavi obsidionem inceperunt.

Victor sit omnium hostium ! Castra Mariana quoque obsidione liberet !

Spero.

Vale.

Vale.

---

[1] Form the Present Subjunctive of *pos-sum* by adding *sim, sis, sit, simus, sitis, sint* to *pos-*.

[2] Say ' that twelve eggs stand at five and twenty shillings ' ; imitate the construction in § 50, l. 19.

[3] Say ' ascend onto ' ; cp. § 50, l. 27.

[4] Use *specto*.

[5] Say ' help to-be-at-hand (*ad-esse*),' as after ' I say,' ' I hear,' etc.

52. [Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the other Conjugations.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

' Let me see-to-it (*videam*) that the army be saved (*salvus*),'
' May I conquer (*vincam*) the enemy,'
' May I soon hear about a victory,'
' May I receive news about a victory,'
' May I be there to see,'

in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(B) May our commander-in-chief conquer the enemy ! May he capture [1] their whole army ! He is sending-out men who shall-make [2] an attack on them from the North, and others who shall block their way [3] from the East. He himself is coming with a very-large army, in order that they may not [4] march to the South.[5] Let the Boers see-to-it that they be not [4] captured ! May Majuba day be not unlucky for us this year ! [6] May we soon hear about a victory, and rejoice ! May Ladysmith never be taken !

53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum*.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

' I dug a trench in order that I might be safe (*tūtus*),'
' I sent-out forces in order that I might be able to surround the enemy,'
' I was marching in order that the town might be safe,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subiunctivi, nisi quod in ultima sententia una tantum persona Subiunctivi dici potest.

(B) Our commander-in-chief had sent-out a body of horsemen in order that Kimberley might be saved.[7] The inhabitants had endured the siege so long that food was very-dear. But they had endured want most-bravely in-order-that the name of Kimberley might be great and famous. On December 10th a British army was only twenty miles away from the town, so that the inhabitants were-able [8] to see the balloon. But on De-

---

[1] Use *capiō.*
[2] Use *faciō.*
[3] Say ' who shall prevent them from-the-march,' as in § 52, l. 8.
[4] For ' in order that . . . not ' say ' lest ' (*nē*).
[5] Say ' the southern part '; cp. § 52, l. 6.
[6] Time when.
[7] Use *salvus, a, um.*
[8] Form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *pos-sum* by adding -*sem*, -*sēs*, -*set*, -*sēmus*, -*sētis*, -*sent* to *pos-*.

cember 11th the army suffered[1] a great reverse, so that it was
necessary to retire[2] to the Modder River.

54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Conj.]

(*A*) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—
  ' I sent-out forces in order that I might raise the siege of
    the town,'
  ' I crossed the river in order that I might dislodge (*locō
    movērem*) the enemy,'
  ' I was trying (*operam dabam*) to conquer the enemy,'
  ' I had resolved to take the town,'
  ' I marched in order that I might guard the town,'
in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(*B*) While one of our generals was fighting on the Modder River
in order to surround the Boers as[3] with a net, the other[4] was
trying most-bravely to raise the siege of Ladysmith.   He had
fought three great battles with the Boers in order to drive them
from the hills which lie to the north of the River Tugela.   And
although he had not fought successfully, he had resolved to
lead[5] his men to the besieged town.   The Boers were fighting in
order that they might block his way.[6]   But our men very-cheer-
fully[7] endured toil and death in order that Ladysmith might
not[8] be taken.

55. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive, continued.]

(*A*) The Boers, too, had tried for four months to take Lady-
smith.   On January 6th they made a great attack in order to
take the town by storm.[9]   But the brave men who were defending
Caesar's Camp compelled them to retire.[10]   On December 8th
six hundred of our men performed an act of great gallantry.[11]

---

[1] Say ' received.'
[2] Say ' to take themselves back.'
[3] *velut* ; cp. § 53, l. 8.
[4] *alter* ; cp. § 54, l. 1.
[5] Either say ' that he should lead,' as in § 54, ll. 21, 22, or use the
Infinitive.
[6] Say ' might prevent him from the march,' as in § 52, l. 8.
[7] Say ' with most-cheerful mind,' as in § 54, l. 12.
[8] For ' in order that . . . not ' use *nē* (' lest '), as in § 53, l. 8.
[9] Use *expugnō* for ' to take by storm.'
[10] Say ' that they should take themselves back.'
[11] Imitate § 48, l. 9.

They marched out of the town by night in order to destroy one of the biggest guns of the Boers. Under the light of the moon, and with naked feet, they ascended the hill on which the gun stood. Suddenly the air trembles with fire and thunder.[1] The gun is nowhere seen,[2] for it has tumbled into the pit which the Boers had dug. Only one of our men was wounded on that night.

(B) *Conversation.*

Marcus. Salvus sis, Antoni ! Audivistine de Castris Marianis obsidione liberatis ?

Antonius. Salvus sum, Marce ; nam audivi. Omnes pueri audiverunt. Sed ecce Alexander ad nos currit.

Alexander. Audivistisne, Marce et Antoni, Castra Mariana obsidione liberata esse ?

M. et Ant. Audivimus.

Alex. Magister classis tertiae mihi dixit et imperavit ut vobis dicerem.

Marc. Non necesse erat ut imperaret.

Alex. Nonne dies feriatus nobis dabitur quo liberi simus scholis ?

Marc. Dari oportet.

Alex. Nonne tota schola hac nocte ignibus festis illustrabitur ? Quid dicis ?

Ant. Fortasse. Sed ecce magister classis quartae ad nos venit. Salve, magister ! Num schola hac nocte ignibus festis illustrabitur ? Alexander scire cupit.

Mag. Nescio. Castra Mariana per quattuor menses ignibus illustrata sunt, sed non festis.

Alex. Nunc festis illustrabuntur. Sed quis ea obsidione liberavit ?

Mag. Fabius ille noster qui—
Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem.

Ant. Quomodo liberavit ?

Mag. Consilium cepit ut Tugelam ab oriente traiceret et impetum in collem Petreium faceret. Atque rem tam bene gessit ut heri manus equitum nostrorum in oppidum equitare posset. Tum finis obsidioni factus est. Nam Batavi se in fugam coniecerunt cum tormentis, vehiculis, ceteris.

Alex. Floreant Castra Mariana !

Ant. Vivat Buller !

Marc. Vivat Robertus noster, qui—
Unus homo nobis properando restituit rem.

---

[1] Imitate § 46, 1. 3.
[2] Use *conspiciō*.

56. [Injunctive and Imperative.]

God save [1] our gracious [2] Queen,
Long live [1] our noble [3] Queen,
God save the Queen.
Send [4] her victorious,[5]
Happy and glorious,
Long to reign [6] over us :
God save the Queen.

Thy choicest gifts in store[7]
On her be pleased to pour,[8]
Long may she reign.[9]
May she defend our laws,[10]
And ever give us cause[11]
To cry with loud applause[12]
God save the Queen.

---

[1] Use the Injunctive; cp. § 49, l. 29. [For 'live' in l. 2 use *flōreō*, 2nd Conj., or *vīvō*, 3rd Conj.]

[2] Use *benignus, a, um*.

[3] Use *optimus, a, um*.

[4] Use the Imperative or Injunctive of *reddō* ('render').

[5] Use *victrix* (*victrīc-*).

[6] Say 'in order that she may long reign (*imperitō*) over-us (Dat.).'

[7] Say 'thy best gifts,' using *dōnum* (2nd Decl., neuter) for 'gift'; and leave out 'in store.'

[8] Say 'mayest thou give to her.'

[9] Use *regnō*.

[10] The Latin for 'law' is *lex* (*lēg-*), 3rd decl., fem.

[11] For 'and ever give us cause to cry' say 'in-order-that we may always (*semper*) exclaim.'

[12] For 'with loud applause' say 'with one voice.'

DOMINE SALVUM FAC REGEM.

(A Latin version of "God save the King," arranged for singing.)*

Vivat Rex optimus !
Fac nobis, o Deus,
Regem salvum.
Illi sit gloria,
Laus et victoria ;
Tu semper sospita
Regem nostrum.

Exsurgas, o Deus,
Hostes ut dissipes,
Et pessum des.
Vindex sis fraudium
Tu nobis omnium ;
Spem nostram, Te Deum
Imploramus.

Tu Regi munera
Da quae sint optima ;
Late regnet.
Leges defendito,
Ut semper gaudio
Cantemus publico,
Salvus sit Rex.

---

* The metre of this Latin version is the same as that of the original : and its quantities correspond to those of the musical notes of the familiar tune.

The following words, which have not appeared in the text of *Pro Patria*, are used :

Vīvere, *to live* ; fac, imperative of faciō ; sospitāre, *to preserve, protect* ; exsurgere, *to arise* ; dissipāre, *to scatter* ; pessum dare, *to make to fall* (lit. *to send to the bottom*) ; vindex, *avenger* ; fraus (fraud-), *fraud, injury* ; mūnus (mūner-), *gift* ; lātē, *widely, far and wide* ; lex (lēg-), *law* ; dēfenditō, 3rd Pers. Sing. of the imperative of dēfendō ; publicus, a, um, *public*.

ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

The words printed in ordinary type are words which have occurred in *Ora Maritima* and which will therefore be familiar to pupils who have used that book. The words printed in **black type** are the new words which occur in this book. The references put after each word (whether printed in black type or not) are references to those sections of the present book (*Pro Patria*) in which the word or meaning occurs for the first time. These references will be found useful in recovering the meanings of words which have been forgotten. A second reference is given in some cases for special reasons. Words with no reference given are words that occur only in the *conversations* or in maps or pictures. English words in square brackets [and ordinary type] are words etymologically connected with the Latin words *but not intended as translations* of them. The Principal Parts given in the case of verbs are the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present and Perfect tenses and the Passive Participle (Adjective) where it exists.

Words of the third declension have the stem inserted in brackets, except where it is the same as the Nom. Sing. (*e.g.* sōl). To words like *navis* the Gen. Plur. is given. Genders are given where irregular according to the rules given in *Ora Maritima*, p. 75 and p. 129 (m.= masculine, f.=feminine, n.=neuter).

The figures 1, 2, 3 denote the declension or conjugation : 'pl.' or 'plur.' denotes plural.

A

A.S.—Annō Salūtis, *in the year of grace,* § 56

ab or ā (with Abl.) *from,* § 2 ; *by,* § 16 ; ab oriente, *from the east, on the east* ; ab occidente, *from the west, on the west,* § 51 ; compare § 52, ll. 7, 8

abhinc, adv. *ago,* § 25

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, *I am distant, I am absent,* § 7

ac-cidit, 3, -cidit, *it happens,* § 39

ac-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, a, um, *I receive,* § 43

accūsō, 1, *I accuse,* § 27

ācer, ācris, ācre, 3, *keen,* § 4 ; **ācerrimus, a, um,** *very keen,* § 33 ; **ācerrimē,** *very keenly,* § 44

acta diurna, 2, plur., *the newspapers,* § 40

actus, a, um, *driven,* § 39 ; see agō

ad (with Acc.), *to,* § 2 ; *for,* § 9, § 17 ; *towards,* § 39 ; *at* or *near,* § 38

Adamanto-polis, 3, (Acc. ·polim, Abl. -poli), *Kimberley,* § 43 [the diamond city, from ' adamas,' *adamant, diamond,* § 51]

adhūc, *hitherto*, § 8 ; *still*, § 10

admīrābilis, 3, adj., *admirable*, § 49

admīrātiō (**-iōn-**), 3, *admiration*, § 6

ad-mittō, 3, **mīsī**, **-missus, a, um**, *I admit* (lit. *let go to*), § 32

ad-ōrō, 1, *I pray to, adore, worship*, § 7

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, *I am present*, § 1 ; *I am here,* § 12

adulescentulus, 2, *young man*, § 17

ad-veniō, 4, **-vēnī,** *I arrive, come to*, § 41

adventō, 1, *I arrive,* § 16 ; *I draw near,* § 28

adventus, 4, *arrival, advent,* § 27

adversus, a, um, *adverse,* § 49

aedificium, 2, *building* [edifice], § 1

aedificō, 1, *I build,* § 16

Aedilberctus, 2, *Ethelbert,* § 25

aegrōtō, 1, *I fall sick,* § 20

aequus, a, um, *even, calm, equal,* § 54

āēr (āer-), 3, m., *air,* § 46 : *gas,* § 50

āērius, a, um, *of the air, aerial :* **nāvis āeria,** *balloon,* § 50

aes (aer-), 3, n., *copper* or *brass,* § 36

aestās (aestāt-), 3, *summer*

aetās (-tāt-), 3, *age,* § 4 ; *old age, time,* § 22

affirmō, 1, *I affirm, state, declare,* § 2

af-fulgeō, 2, **-fulsī,** *I shine on, I dawn on,* § 55.

Āfrica, 1, *Africa,* § 31

Āfricānus, a, um, *African,* § 31 ; *Africander,* § 35 ; *levied in Africa,* § 38

ager, agr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, *field,* § 16

agmen (**-min-**), 3, *column, army on the march,* § 46

agō, 3, **ēgī, actus, a, um,** *I drive,* § 39 ; *I do,* § 46, *I render,* § 56

agricola, 1, *farmer,* § 33

Agricola (**Iūlius**), *a governor of Britain,* § 1

alacer, alacris, alacre, 3, *eager,* § 1

Alexander, Alexandr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, *Alexander,* § 1

aliquandō, *some day,* § 8 ; *at last,* § 18

aliquis (m., f.), **aliquid** (n.), *some one, something,* § 1, § 37

alius, alia, aliud, *other* [Gen. Sing. **alīus,** Dat. Sing. **aliī**], § 4 ; alius, . . . alius, *the one . . . the other,* § 46

allēlūia, *hallelujah,* § 27

altē, adv., *deep, high,* § 22

alter, altera, alterum, *another, a second,* § 11 (Gen. Sing. **alterīus,** Dat. Sing. **alterī**)

altitūdō (**-tūdin-**), 3, *height, altitude,* § 22

altus, a, um, *high, lofty* [altitude], § 22 ; *deep,* § 23

ambulātiō (-iōn-), 3, *walk,* § 22

ambulō, 1, *I walk,* § 1

amīcus, 2, *friend,* § 1

amita, 1, *aunt,* § 18

ā-mittō, 3, **-mīsī, -missus, a, um,** *I lose* (lit. *let go away*), § 38

amō, 1, *I love, like,* § 7

amor (**amōr-**), 3, *love,* § 49

amphitheātrum, 2, *amphitheatre,* § 15

amplius (Neuter Comparative of **amplus, a, um**), *more,* § 2

angelicus, a, um, *angelic,* § 28

angelus, 2, *angel,* § 28

Anglia, 1, *England,* § 25

Anglicus, a, um, *English,* § 1, § 24

Anglus, 2, *Englishman,* § 21 ; *Angle,* § 24

angulus, 2, *angle, corner,* § 12

animus, 2, *mind,* § 1

Annālēs, 3, pl., *the Annals,* a work of Tacitus, § 1

annus, 2, *year* [annual], § 2

ante (with Acc.), *before,* § 1 ; as adverb, § 20

antequam, *before=before the time when,* § 26

antīquus, a, um, *ancient,* § 1

Antōnius, 2, *Antony* (the writer of these commentaries), § 52

anxius, a, um, *anxious*, § 52 (animō anxius, *anxious in mind*)

apertus, a,um, *open*, § 44, § 56

applicō, 1, *I bring to land* [apply], § 23

ap-portō, 1, *I bring up*, § 9

appropinquō, 1, *I approach*, § 13

aptus, a, um, *fitted* [apt], § 17

apud (with Acc.), *in the house of* (=French *chez*), § 1 ; *in the writings of*, § 17 ; *among*, § 46

aqua, 1, *water* [aquarium], § 23 ; of the water-clock, aqua haeret, *the clock stops*, §§ 24, 25 ; aquam perdō, *I waste time*, § 32

aquila, 1, *eagle*, § 44

āra, 1, *altar*, § 4

ārea, 1, *open space* [area], § 23

argenteus, a, um, *made of silver*, § 27

arma, 2, neut. plur., *arms*, § 1

armātūra, 1, *armour*, § 38

ars (art-), 3, *art*, § 15

a-scendō, 3, -scendī, *I ascend*, § 38 (lit. *climb up to*, from ad- and scandō ; cf. dē-scendō)

āter, ātra, ātrum, *dark, ill-omened*, § 30

atque, *and also, aye and*, § 4

ātrium, 2, *hall*

atrox (atrōc-), 3, adj., *horrible*, § 13

audācia, 1, *courage, audacity*, § 6

audax (audāc-), 3, adj., *audacious, bold, courageous*, § 5

audiō, 4, *I hear*, § 40

Augustīnus, 2, *Augustine*, first archbishop of Canterbury, died A.D. 604

Aulus Plautius, a Roman general of the time of Claudius, § 5

aureus, a, um, *golden*

auscultō, 1, *I listen*, § 8

Austrālia, 1, *Australia*, § 51

Austrāliensis, e, 3, *Australian*, § 49

aut, *or* ; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, § 17

autem, *however, moreover, and*, § 1

auxilium, 2, *help, aid* ; auxiliō esse, *to be a help*, § 39 ; auxilia (plur.), *auxiliaries*, § 4

ā-vertō, 3, -vertī, -versus, a, um, *I avert*, lit. *turn away* (cf. Engl. ' averse '), § 52

B

balneae, 1, pl., *baths*, § 15

barbarus, a, um, *barbarous*, § 15

basilica, 1, *basilica, church*, § 15

Batāvus, a, um, *Dutch* ; **Batāvus**, 2, *a Dutchman*, § 11 ; *the Dutchman* [Cronje], § 45

Bēda, 1, *Bede*, § 27

Belgae, 1, pl., *Belgians*, a tribe in the north of Gaul and also in South Britain (Hampshire), § 34

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*, § 5

bellō, 1, *I wage war*, § 5

bellum, 2, *war*, § 2

bellus, a, um, *jolly* [French bel, belle], § 29 ; Mons Bellus, *Belmont*, on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 44

bene, *well*, § 37

beneficium, 2, *benefit, service*, § 56

benignus, a, um, *kind*, § 25

Bercta, 1, *Bertha*, § 25

bis, adv., *twice*, § 54

Bodotria, 1, *Forth (firth of)*, § 4

bonus, a, um, *good*, § 4

bōs (bov-), 3, irregular in some cases ; m. or f., *ox*, § 50

Boudicca, 1, the proper form of the name *Boadicea*, queen

of the Iceni, § 8.   In Celtic
Boudicca means something
like 'Victorina' or 'Vic-
toria'

brevis, e, 3, adj., *brief, short*, § 56

Brigantēs, 3, a tribe in the north
of Britain, § 11

Britannia, 1, *Britain*, § 1

Britannicus, a, um, *British*, § 3 :
name of a son of Claudius,
§ 5

Britannus, 2, *Briton*, § 2

C

C.=Gāius (Gāium, Gāī, Gāiō), § 2

cachinnō, 1, *I laugh*, § 17

cadens (cadent-), 3, *falling*, § 17

cadō, 3, **cecidī,** *I fall* (of rain,
§ 50);=*I am killed*, § 48 ; *I
cease*, § 56

caelum, 2, *sky, climate*, § 18

caeruleus, a, um, *blue*, § 28

Caesar, 3, *Caesar*, § 2 ; *emperor*, § 8

Calēdonēs, 3, *the Caledonians*, § 12

Calēdonia, 1, *Caledonia, Scotland*,
§ 11

Calēdonius, a, um, *Caledonian,
Scottish*, § 12

Caligula 1, *Caligula*, the third
Roman Emperor, § 2 (from
'caliga,' *a soldier's boot*)

Callēva   Atrebatum, *Silchester*,
near Basingstoke, § 15

calor (calōr-), 3, *heat*, § 47

Cambria, 1, *Wales*, § 5

campus, 2, *plain*, § 13 ; campī
lātī et apertī, *the veldt*, § 44

Camulodūnum, 2, *Colchester*, in
Essex, § 3

Canada, 1, *Canada*, § 49

Canadensis, e, *of Canada*, § 53

cantans (cantant-), 3, *singing*, § 27

Cantium, 2, *Kent*, § 24

cantō, 1, *I sing*, § 17

capillus, 2, *hair*, § 17

capiō, 3, **cēpī, captus, a, um,** *I
take, capture*, § 43 ; **dolōrem
capiō,** *I feel grief*, § 43 ; **dē-
trīmentum   capiō,** *I suffer
harm* § 52

captīvus, 2, *captive*, § 2 : *prisoner*,
§ 53

captō, 1, *I catch*, § 9

caput (capit-), 3, n., *head, capi-
tal*, § 3 ; *chapter*, § 1

Caratacus, 2, the correct form
of the name *Caractacus*
(Celtic Caradog), § 3.   The
form Caractacus is a mis-
take due to one inferior MS.
of Tacitus.   We have the
same Celtic root in 'Mac-
Carthy'

carmen (-min-), 3, *poem*, § 17 ;
hymn, § 27

carō (carn-), 3, f., *flesh*, § 50 .

Carthūsiānus, a, um, *Carthusian ;*
Domus Carthūsiāna, *Charter-
house School*, § 56

cārus, a, um, *dear*, § 4 ; *expensive*
§ 51

casa, 1, *cottage*, § 13

Cassī. 2, a tribe in Hertford-
shire, § 7

Cassivellaunus, 2, King of the
Cassi in Hertfordshire, § 2

castellum, 2, *fort*, § 11 ; *castle*,
§ 18 ; *castle-liner*, § 42

castra, 2, neut. pl., *camp*, § 5 ;
Castra Mariāna, *Ladysmith*,
§ 38 ; for the explanation of
the Adjective 'Mariāna' see
under the letter M.   Caesaris
Castra, *Caesar's camp*, an out-
post of Ladysmith, § 50

catēna, 1, *chain*, § 6

causa, 1, *cause, reason*, § 12 ; causā, *by reason, for the sake*, § 9

celeber, celebris, celebre, 3, *celebrated*, § 1 ; *crowded, frequented*, § 9

celeriter, *quickly*

Celticus, a, um, *Celtic*, § 21

cēna, 1, *supper, late dinner*, § 24

cēnō, 1, *I sup, dine*, § 18

centum (indecl.), *a hundred*, § 3

centuria, 1, *company* (of soldiers), 100 men [century], § 53

cēreus, 2, *wax taper, candle*, § 23

certāmen (-min-), 3, *contest*, § 17

cervīnus, a, um, *of a stag* (Dutch ' eland '), § 38

cēterī, ae, a, *the others, the rest*, § 6 ; =Eng. ' etcetera,' § 32

Christiānus, a, um, *Christian*, § 25

Christus, 2, *Christ*, § 3

cibus, 2, *food*, § 43

Cimbricus, a, um, *Cimbrian ;* paeninsula Cimbrica, *Jutland, Denmark*, § 24

circiter, *about*, § 44

circum (Preposition with Acc. ; or Adverb), *around*, § 23

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, a, um, *I surround*, § 13

cīvis (Gen. Plur. cīvium), 3, *citizen*, § 32

cīvitās (-tāt-), 3, *state* [city], § 2 ; *citizenship*, § 32.

clādēs, 3, *disaster*, § 8

clārus, a, um, *famous*, § 6 [Clara]

classiāriī, 2, plur., *seamen, men of the fleet, marines*, § 39, § 44

classis (Gen. Pl. classium), 3, *fleet*, § 11 ; *class*, § 33

Claudiānus, 2, a Roman poet of the 4th century A.D.

Claudius, 2, *Claudius*, the fourth Roman emperor, § 5

clēmens (clēment-), 3, *clement, merciful*, § 10

clīvus, 2, *hill, down*, § 26

Clōta, 1, *Clyde, Firth of Clyde*, § 11

co-actus, a, um, *compelled*, § 39 (see cōgō)

cōgitō, 1, *I think, meditate*, § 2

co-gnātus, 2, *kinsman*, § 34 (co-, *with*, gnātus=nātus, *born*)

co-gnōmen (-min-), 3, *sur-name, additional name* (co-, *with*, gnōmen=nōmen), § 31

cōgō (=co-agō), 3, co-ēgī, co-actus, a, um, *I compel* ; with Infin. § 39 ; with *ut* and Subj. § 54

cohors (cohort-), 3, *cohort* (=about 500 men ; one-tenth part of a legion), § 11 ; *battalion* (=eight companies ; about 800 men), § 38

col-ligō, 3, -lēgī, -lectus, a, um, *I collect* (con, *together*, legō, *I gather*), § 36

collis (Gen. Pl. collium), 3, m., *hill*, § 13

col-locātus, a, um, *having been placed*, § 6

col-locō, 1, *I place* [locate], § 5

colō, 3, coluī, cultus, a, um, *I cultivate*, § 32

colōnia, 1, *colony, settlement*, § 5 ; *Cape Colony*, § 38

colōnus, 2, *tiller of the soil, settler, Boer*, § 32

columba, 1, *pigeon*, § 43

commemorō, 1, *I mention* [commemorate], § 3

commentāriī, 2, pl., *notes, commentaries*, § 36

com-meō, 1, *I go there and back, I travel*, § 18

com-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, a, um, *I engage in* [commit, commission], § 39

com-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, a, um, *I move, stir* [commotion], § 28

com-mūniō (-iōn-), 3, *community, partnership*, § 34, § 56

com-mūnis, e, 3, *common*, § 56

com-parō, 1, *I get together, prepare*, § 11

com-pellō, 3, **-pulī, -pulsus, a, um,**
I drive together [compel, com-
pulsion], § 40

con-clāmō, 1, *I proclaim aloud,*
§ 53

con-cordia, 1, *concord, harmony,
friendliness,* § 56

con-discipulus, 2, *school-fellow,* § 43

con-dō, 3, **-didī, -ditus, a, um,** *I
found* (con-, *together,* dō, *I
put*), § 35

confūsus, a, um, *confused, mingled
together* (from con-fundō), § 46

con-gregō, 1, *I gather together* [con-
gregation], § 11

con-iciō (= **con-iiciō**), 3, **-iēcī,
-iectus, a, um,** *I throw* : in
fugam con., *I put to flight,* § 44

con-scrībō, 3, **-scrīpsī, scrīptus,
a, um,** *I enrol* (lit. *write to-
gether,* hence ' conscript '),
§ 36

con-secrō, 1, *I consecrate, immor-
talize,* § 10

con-servō, 1, *I preserve* [con-
serve, conservative], § 56

consilium, 2, *counsel, plan, policy,*
§ 5

con-sociō, 1, *I ally, unite,* § 3 ;
consociātus, a, um, *united,*
§ 38

con-spiciō, 3, **-spexī, -spectus, a,
um,** *I catch sight of, discern,
see,* § 46

con-stituō, 3, **-stituī, -stitūtus, a,
um,** *I fix, determine* [con-
stitute, con-stitution], § 50 ;
constituō ut (with Subj.), *I
resolve that,* § 54

con-stō,-stāre, -stitī, *I consist* [con,
together, stō, *I stand*] ; *I cost,*
§ 50 ; constat (3rd person)
= *is known,* § 24

consultum, 2, *resolution,* § 37

con-tendō, 3, **-tendī,** *I strive, con-
tend,* § 46

con-tineō, 2, **-tinuī, -tentus, a, um,**
I con-tain, hold together (con,

together, teneō, *I hold*) ;
passive with Abl. = *depend
on,* § 56

contrā (with Acc.), *against,* § 4

contrārius, a, um, *contrary, con-
tradictory,* § 56

contumēlia, 1, *insult,* § 32

con-vocō, 1, *I call together,* § 6

cōpia, 1, *abundance,* § 9
cōpiae (plur.), *forces,* § 2

Coritānī, 2, plur., a British tribe
in Lincolnshire, § 8

cornū, 4, *horn, wing* (of a build-
ing, § 23 ; of an army, § 47)

corpus (corpor-), 3, *body* [corpor-
al], § 13 ; *a political body,*
§ 49

cotīdiē, adv., *every day,* § 1

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *crowded*
(Abl. = *with*), *frequent,* § 41

cremātus, a, um, *burned,* § 13

cremō, 1, *I burn* [cremation], § 8

creō, 1, *I create,* § 2

crūdēlis, e, 3, adj., *cruel,* § 8

crux (cruc-), 3, *cross,* § 23 ; crux
Victōriāna, *the Victoria Cross,*
§ 56

culīna, 1, *kitchen*

cum (with Abl.), *together with,
with,* § 5

cum, *when,* § 3

cunctandō, *by delaying* (from
cunctor, *I delay*), § 49

cunctī, ae, a, plur., *all together*
(from co-iunctī), § 56

cunīculus, 2, *underground passage,
tunnel, mine* (properly *rabbit-
hole*), § 23

Cunobelīnus, 2, *Cymbeline,* a
British king, § 3

cupidus, a, um, *desirous, eager,* § 6

cupiō, 3, **cupīvī, cupītus, a, um,**
I desire, § 43

cūr, *why,* § 18

cūra, 1, *care,* § 2

cūrō, 1, *I care for, attend to, mind,*
§ 32 ; with ut = *take care that.*
§ 52

currō, 3, **cu-currī**, *I run* [current = running water], § 49 ; (of Time), *run out, pass*, § 32

cursus, 4, *course*, § 24

custōdiō, 4, *I guard, keep, preserve*, § 40

custōs (custōd-), 3, *keeper, guard*, § 23 ; Custōdēs Rēgālēs, *the Guards*, § 44.

D

dē (with Abl.), *about*, § 1 ; *down from*, or *from*, § 28

dē-bellātus, a, um, *defeated, conquered* (lit. *warred down*), § 4

dē-bellō,1, *I defeat, war down*, § 2

dē-beō, 2, **dē-buī, dē-bitus, a, um**, *I owe* (from *dē-habeō*), § 56

dē-cēdō, 3, **-cessī**, *I depart, decease* ; with Abl. =*from*, § 56

decem (indeclinable), *ten*, § 9

December, bris, bre, 3, *of December*, § 43

decimus, a, um, *tenth*, § 2

decus (decor-), 3, *distinction* [decor-ation], § 56

dē-dō, 3, **-didī, -ditus, a, um,** *I surrender*, § 39

dē-dūcō, 3, **-duxī, -ductus, a, um,** *I draw away, withdraw* [deduct], § 37

dē-fendō, 3, **-fendī, -fensus, a, um,** *I defend*, § 35

dēfensor (dēfensōr-), 3, *defender*, § 4

dē-ficiō, 3, **-fēcī, -fectus, a, um,** *I desert, forsake* ; (in the 3rd person) *it runs short, comes to an end*, § 43

deinde, adv., *thereupon, next*, § 5, § 18

dēlectō, 1, *I delight*, § 1 ; Passive, *I am delighted, I am interested*, §§ 16, 17

dēleō, 2, **dēlēvī, dēlēt-us, a, um,** *I destroy*, § 22

dēnārius, 2, a Roman silver coin =one shilling, § 50

dēnegō, 1, *I deny, refuse*, § 32

densus, a, um, *dense, thick*

dēplōrō, 1, *I deplore, lament*, § 48

dēportō, 1, *I carry off, deport*, § 5

dē-scendō, 3, **-scendī**, *I descend*, lit. *climb down*, § 50

dē-spērō, 1, *I despair*, § 49 ; with Accusative, *I despair of*, § 53

dē-sum, dē-esse, dē-fuī, *I am wanting*, § 1

dētrīmentum, 2, *loss, harm, detriment* : quid dētrīmentī, *any harm*, lit *anything of harm, anything in the way of harm*, § 52

deus, 2, *god*, § 7; deus (Vcc. Sing.), § 27, l. 21, dī (Nom. Plur.), § 8

Dēva, 1, *Chester*, § 5

dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right*, § 23

dextra, 1, *right hand*, § 17

dic, *say* (Imperative of *dīcō*)

dīcō, 3, dixī, dictus, a, um, *I tell, say, speak*, § 32 ; *I declare*, § 34

diēs, 5, generally m., *day*, § 29

difficilis, e, 3, *difficult*, § 1 ; Superlative difficillimus, a, um, § 54

dīligenter, adv., *diligently*, § 37

discipulus, 2, *pupil* [disciple], § 33

discordia, 1, *quarrel, discord*, § 31

disputō, 1, *I dispute*, § 19

di-stō, 1, *I am distant*, § 42

diū, *long, for a long time*, § 43

diurnus, a, um, *of the day*, § 40

dīversus, a, um, *diverse, different*, § 21 (ā, *from*)

dīvidō, 3, **dīvīsī, dīvīsus, a, um,** *I divide*, § 33

dīvīsus, a, um, *divided*, § 4 (Adj. formed from dīvidō)

dīvus, a, um, *divine, deified,* § 2 :
an adjective applied to em-
perors after their death ; the
Romans used to worship
them as gods

dō, dare, dedī, *I give,* § 1 ; *I put*
(mortī, *to death,* § 3 ; in fugam,
to flight, § 13 ; in viam, *to
the road,* § 18, § 29) ; *I send*
(litterās, *a letter,* § 31) ; *I de-
liver* (impetum, *an attack,*
§ 50)

doceō, 2, **docuī, doctus, a, um,** *I
teach* [doctor = teacher], § 25

doctus, a, um, *learned, taught*
[doctor], § 19

dolor (dolōr-), 3, *grief,* § 43

domesticus, a, um, *internal* [dom-
estic] ; bellum domesticum,
civil war, § 2

domī, *at home,* § 29, § 49

domina, 1, *mistress* [dame], § 36

domō, 1, **domuī, domitus, a, um,**
I subdue, § 56

domum, *homewards* (*home*), § 18

domus (irregularly declined, see
Preparations, § 27), f., *home,*
§ 25 ; *house,* § 27

dōnec, *until,* § 49

Druidae, 1, pl., *Druids,* § 7

Dubrae, 1, pl., *Dover,* § 16

ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred,* § 42

dūcō, 3, **duxī, ductus, a, um,** *I
draw, derive,* § 33 ; *I lead,*
§ 36 ; via dūcit, *the way
leads,* § 44

dulcis, 3, adj., *sweet, pleasant,* § 47

dum, *while,* § 1

duo, duae, duo (Gen. duōrum,
duārum ; Dat., Abl. duōbus,
duābus), *two,* § 1

duodecim (indeclinable), *twelve,*
§ 36

duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth,* § 6

duodēoctōgēsimus, a, um, *seventy-
eighth,* § 10

duodētrīcēsimus, a, um, *twenty-
eighth,* § 45

duodēvīcēsimus, a, um, *eighteenth,*
§ 47

duodēvīgintī (indeclinable), *eight-
een,* § 35

Durovernum, 2, *Canterbury,* § 25

dux (duc-), 3, *leader, general,* § 1

E

Eburācum, 2, *York,* § 20

ecce, *behold,* § 8

ēducātus, a, um (from ēducō, 1),
educated, § 56

ē-dūcō, 3, **-duxī, -ductus, a, um,**
I lead out, § 47

ef-fundō, 3, **-fūdī, -fūsus, a, um,**
I pour out [ef-fus-ive, con-
fuse], § 40

ego, *I,* § 17.

ēgregius, a, um, *excellent,* § 47 ;
eminent, distinguished, § 48

ēlapsus, a, um, *elapsed, slipped
away,* § 1

ē-mittō, -mīsī, -missus, a, um,
I send out, § 40 ; *I let out,*
§ 50

ēn, *behold, here is,* § 36

enim, *for,* § 41

eō, adv., *thither,* § 43

Epaticcus, 2, brother of Cuno-
belinus, § 3

eques (equit-), 3, *horse-soldier,*
§ 38

equester, tris, tre, 3, *cavalry*
(used as an adj.), *equestrian,*
§ 2

equīnus, a, um, *of a horse* ; **carō
equīna,** *horse-flesh,* § 50 ;
Mons Equīnus, *Paardeberg*
(=horse-mountain), § 53

equitō, 1, *I ride,* § 8

equus, 2, *horse,* § 6

error (errōr-), 3, *error, mistake*

esse (Pres. Infin. of sum, *I am*), *to be*, § 17

essedum, 2, *chariot*, § 8

estō (Imperative of sum, *I am ;* 2nd or 3rd pers. sing.), *be* or *let there be*, § 49 ; *granted*, § 56

et, *and*

et . . . et, *both . . . and*

etiam, *also, even*, § 15 ; etiam atque etiam, *again and again*, § 36, § 43

Etōna, 1, *Eton*, § 56

eugē, *bravo !* (ē in Plautus), § 18

Eurōpa, 1, *Europe*, § 41

Eurōpaeus, a, um, *European*, § 33

ēvādō, 3, **ēvāsī,** *I escape*, § 53

ex (with Abl.), *out of, from*, § 1, § 9 (servō ex clāde) ; *since*, § 35 ; *instead of*, § 54, § 56, l. 26 ex quō, *since*, § 25

excavō, 1, *I excavate*, § 23

exclāmō, 1, *I exclaim*, § 18

exemplum, 2, *example*, § 36

exercitus, 4, *army*, § 34

existimō, 1, *I consider* [estimate], § 14

expedītiō (-iōn-), 3, *expedition*, § 4

explicō, 1, *I explain*, § 1 ; *deploy, arrange*

explōrātor (explōrātōr-), 3, *scout* [exploration], § 46

explōrō, 1, *I explore*, § 11 ; *I investigate*, § 50

expugnō, 1, *I storm, take by storm*, § 2

ex-scrībō, 3, **-scrīpsī, -scrīptus, a, um,** *I write out, copy*, § 36

exspectātiō (-iōn-), 3, *expectation*, § 9

exspectō, 1, *I expect, await*, § 12

exspīrō, 1, *I expire, die*, § 20 ; *I breathe out*, § 56

ex-stō, -stāre, -stitī, *I exist, remain, am extant*, § 3

F

Fabius Maximus, 2, a celebrated Roman general in the Second Punic War ; called ' Cunctātor,' *the Delayer ;* § 49

fabricō, 1, *I manufacture* [fabricate], § 55

fābula, 1, *story, drama* [fable], § 17

faciēs, 5, *face, form*, § 28

facile, adv., *easily*, § 5

facilis, e, 3, *easy*, § 5 ; superlative facillimus, a, um (cf. difficillimus)

facinus (facinor-), 3, *deed, achievement, exploit*, § 12 ; facinus pulchrum et perīculōsum, *an act of great gallantry*, § 48

faciō, 3, **fēcī, factus, a, um,** *I make, do*, § 43 ; *I perform*, § 48

falsus, a, um, *false*, § 8

fānum, 2, *shrine*, § 7

fatīgātus, a, um, *tired* [fatigued], *fagged*, § 22

Februārius, a, um, *of February*, § 52

fēmina, 1, *woman* [hence ' feminine '], § 8

fenestra, 1, *window*, § 26

ferē, *almost, about*, § 3

fēriae, 1, pl., *holidays*, § 1

fēriātus, a, um, *unemployed ;* **diēs feriātus,** *a holiday*, § 30

ferox (ferōc-), 3, adj., *warlike*

ferrātus, a, um, *fitted with iron, shod with iron ;* via ferrāta, *railway*, § 50

ferus, a, um, *savage, fierce*, § 4

festīnō, 1, *I hurry*, § 18

festus, a, um, *festal, festive ;* **diēs festus,** *a holy day*, § 30 ; **ornātus festus,** *holiday attire*, § 50 ; **ignēs festī,** *illuminations, fireworks*, § 55

fidēs, 5, *faith, truth, loyalty*, § 28

fīdus, a, um, *faithful*, § 25

fīlia, 1, *daughter*, § 10

fīlius, 2 (Voc. fīlī, § 39), *son*, § 5

fīnis, 3, *end*, § 1 ; Plur. fīnēs, m., (Gen. fīnium), *boundaries, territory*, § 8

firmō, 1, *I strengthen* [make firm], § 7

firmus, a, um, *firm,* § 56

flāvus, a, um, *yellow,* § 23

flōreō, 2, flōruī, *I flourish,* § 56

Flōrifontium, 2, *Bloemfontein* (=Flower fountain), the capital of the Orange River Colony, § 56

flūmen (-min-), 3, *river*, § 2

fluō, 3, **fluxī,** *I flow,* § 47

focus, 2, *hearth, home,* § 4

fodiō, 3, **fōdī, fossus, a, um,** *I dig,* § 43. Hence comes the word ' fossil ' (=a thing dug up)

foedus (foeder-), 3, *league* [confeder-ation], § 48 (heading), § 49

follis (Gen. Plur. follium), 3, m., *a ball inflated with air, a football,* § 17

forma, 1, *form, shape,* § 23

formīdō, 1, *I fear,* § 6

fortasse, *perhaps,* § 17

forte, adv., *by chance, perchance,* § 17

fortis, 3, adj., *brave, strong,* § 2

fortiter, *bravely,* § 5 ; fortissimē, *very bravely,* § 38

fortitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *fortitude, bravery,* § 54

fortius, comp. adv., *more bravely,* § 54

fortūna, 1, *fortune, fate,* § 24 ; *good fortune,* § 48

forum, 2, *market-place, forum,* § 15, § 28

fossa, 1, *trench,* § 44 (from fodiō, *I dig*)

foveō, 2, **fōvī, fōtus, a, um,** *I foster,* § 56

Francī, 2, plur., *Franks,* § 25

Francogallus, 2, *a Frenchman,* § 32

frāter (frātr-), 3, *brother,* § 3

fretum, 2, *channel, straits,* § 11

frustrā, *in vain,* § 39

fuga, 1, *flight,* § 13

fuisse (Perf. Inf. of sum, *I am*), *to have been,* § 19

fundāmentum, 2, *foundation,* § 22

furor (furōr-), 3, *madness* [fury], § 39

G

Gallia, 1, *Gaul,* § 2

Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic,* § 4 ; fretum Gallicum, *the English Channel*

gallīna, 1, *hen, fowl,* § 50

gaudeō, 2 (Perf. Irreg.), *I rejoice,* § 22

gaudium, 2, *joy, delight,* § 51

geminō, 1, *I double, I return* (a ball), § 17

gens (gent-), 3, *tribe* [gentile]. § 3 ; *nation,* § 56

genus (gener-), 3, *kind* [gener-al], § 40 ; *race,* § 56

Germānia, 1, *Germany,* § 33 ; the name of a work of Tacitus, § 34

Germānicus, a, um, *Germanic, Teutonic,* § 21

germānus, 2, *brother,* § 34 ; **germāna,** 1, *sister*

Germānus, 2, *a German, Teuton,* § 32

gerō, 3, **gessī, gestus, a, um,** *I wear, carry,* § 55 ; *I wage, carry on* (bellum, *war*), § 56

glōria, 1, *glory, fame,* § 56

Graecus, a, um, *Greek* ; Graecus, 2, *a Greek,* § 37

grāmineus, a, um, *grassy,* § 26

grandis, e, 3, adj., *big, grand,* § 6

grātia, 1, *gratitude, thanks,* § 51 ; **grātiās agō,** *I return thanks,* § 56
grātus, a, um, *pleasing,* § 18
Graupius, a, um, *Grampian,* § 11

graviter, adv., *seriously, severely* [gravely], § 38
Gregorius, 2, *Gregory,* § 25
gremium, 2, *bosom,* § 56
gustō, 1, *I taste,* § 31

H

habeō, 2, **habuī, habitus, a, um,** *I have,* § 22 ; **bene mē habeō,** *I am all right,* § 22 ; *I hold,* § 24
habitō, 1, *I dwell,* § 8
haereō, 2, **haesī,** *I stick,* § 24
Helvētius, 2, *a Swiss* (noun), § 32
herī, adv., *yesterday,* § 42
heu, interjection, *alas !* § 28
Hibernia, 1, *Ireland,* § 19
Hibernicus, a, um, *Irish,* § 38
hīc, adv., *here, at this place,* § 23
hīc, haec, hōc, *this,* § 10 ; hī vīgintī diēs, *these* (=*the last*) *twenty days,* § 44
hiems (hiem-), 3, *winter*
hilarus, a, um, *cheerful, merry, hilarious,* § 47
hinc, adv., *hence, from this place,* § 22
historia, 1, *history,* § 1 ; Historiae (plur.), *Histories,* a work of Tacitus, § 34

historicus, a, um, *historical,* § 19
hodiē, *to-day, at the present day, nowadays,* § 3
hodiernus, a, um, *of the present day,* § 17
homō (homin-), 3, *man,* § 2
honor *or* **honōs (honōr-),** 3, *honour,* § 24
hōra, 1, *hour,* § 1, § 18 (*o'clock*) ; =*time,* § 32
Horātius, 2 (Quintus Horātius Flaccus), a Roman poet of the age of Augustus, § 4
horridus, a, um, *rugged, savage* [horrid], § 38
hospitium, 2, *inn*
hostis (Gen. Plur. hostium), 3, *enemy* [hostile], § 4
hūc, adv., *hither, to this place,* § 25
hūiusmodī, *of this kind,* § 45
hūmānus, a, um, *humane, kind, civilized,* § 10 ; *human,* § 56
humō, 1, *I bury,* § 56

I

iaceō, 2, **iacu-ī,** *I lie* (=*am situated*), § 22, § 46
iaciō, 3, **iēcī, iactus, a, um,** *I throw,* § 43
iactō, 1, *I hurl,* § 13
iam, *already,* § 6 ; iam tum, *even then* (=even at that early time), § 9 ; *any longer* (with a negative) : nōn iam, *no longer, not any longer* : nullus iam, *none any longer,* § 50
iānua, 1, *door, gate,* § 56
Iānuārius, a, um, *of January,* § 47

ibi, *there,* § 1
Icēnī, 2, plur., a British tribe in Norfolk, § 7
Īdūs, 4, plur., *Ides* (about the middle of a month ; the 13th or 15th day), § 30
ientāculum, 2, *breakfast,* § 18
igitur, *therefore, then,* § 1
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly, coward,* § 7
ignis (Gen. Plur. ignium), 3, m., *fire, flash,* § 46
ignōrō, 1, *I do not know* [ignore]

ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*, § 8

ille, illa, illud, *yon, that*, § 7 ; *the great, the well-known*, § 56

illīc, *there, yonder*, § 31

illustrō, 1, *I illustrate*, § 1 ; *light up*, § 29

imber (imbr-), 3, *shower, rain*, § 46

immō, adv., *on the contrary*, § 37

imperātor (imperātōr-), 3, *commander*, § 16 ; *commander-in-chief*, § 42

imperfectus, a, um, *imperfect, incomplete*, § 56

imperitō, 1, *I am emperor*, § 3 ; *I hold sway*, § 8 ; with Dat. (=*over*), § 6

imperium, 2, *empire*, § 3 ; *command*, § 10, plur. § 46

imperō, *I order*, § 1 ; (with Dat.), *I impose (upon)*, § 2 ; imperō ut (with Subjunctive), *I order that* (something shall be done), § 51

impetus, 4, *assault, attack*, § 43 ; *charge*, § 44 ; *fury*, § 54

impiger, impigra, impigrum, *active* (not sluggish), § 17

impigrē, *actively, bravely*, § 38

implōrō, 1, *I implore*, § 6

in (with Abl.), *in or on*, § 1 ; (with Acc.), *into or onto*, § 2

in-certus, a, um, *un-certain*, § 26

in-cidō, 3, **-cidī**, *I fall upon* (with Dat.), § 39 [hence English 'incident'] ; *I fall into* (in insidiās), § 46

in-cipiō, 3, **-cēpī, -ceptus, a, um**, *I begin*, § 44

incitō, 1, *I urge, incite*, § 8

incola, 1, *inhabitant*, § 2

in-colō, 3, **-coluī**, *I inhabit*, § 32

incommodum, 2, *misfortune, reverse*, § 39

indāgō (-gin-), 3, *net*, § 13

inde, *thence*

index (indic-), 3, *index* ; **index verbōrum**, *vocabulary*

indicō, 1, *I indicate, point out*, § 46

in-dīcō, 3, **-dīxī, -dictus, a, um**, *I declare* (**bellum,** *war*), § 37

inferior (inferiōr-), 3. comp. adj., *lower* [inferior], § 24

in-fluō, 3, **-fluxī**, *I flow in* [influx], § 33

in-fundō, 3, **-fūdī, -fūsus, a, um**, *I pour in* [infuse, infusion], § 34

ingens (ingent-), 3, adj., *huge*, § 9

inhūmānus, a, um, *unkind, inhuman*, § 14 ; *uncivilized*, § 15

in-humātus, a, um, *un-buried*, § 13

in-īquus, a, um, *un-favourable* (in-, *un*-, aequus, *equal, favourable*), § 39

initium, 2, *beginning*, § 20

iniūria, 1. *injury, wrong*, § 7

inopia, 1, *want*, § 50

inquam, *say I, I say*, § 21 ; inquit, *says he, he says*, § 6 ; inquimus, *we say*, § 18; inquiunt, *they say*, § 22

in-scrībō, 3, **-scripsī, -scriptus, a, um,** *I inscribe, write an inscription*, § 56

insidiae, 1, plur., *ambush, trap*, § 46

in-sīdō, 3, **-sēdī, -sessus, a, um,** *I settle on, am perched on*, § 44

insigne, 3 (declined like mare), *distinction, badge* [ensign], § 34

insignis, e, 3, *distinguished*, § 5

in-stō, -stāre, -stitī, *I am at hand*, § 30 (with Dat.) ; *I pursue*, § 45

insula, 1, *island*, § 2

in-sum, -fuī, -esse, *I am in*, § 1 ; sometimes with Dat.

intactus, a, um, *untouched, intact*, § 4

inter (with Acc.), *between*, § 8, § 31 ; *during*, § 18 ; *among*, § 7, § 19, § 32 ; inter sē, *one with the other, mutually*, § 56

interdum, *sometimes*, § 1

intereā, *meanwhile*, § 9

inter-ficiō, 3, **-fēcī, -fectus, a, um,** *I kill* (lit. *make away with*), § 43

interim, *meanwhile*

interior (interiōr-), 3, *interior, inner*, § 11

interrogō, 1, *I ask, enquire*, § 19

intrā (with Acc.), *within*, § 23 ; (of time), § 29

intrō, 1, *I enter*, § 2

invictus, a, um, *unconquered, invincible*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *-self*, § 6 ; **in ipsō tempore,** *at the very time, in the nick of time,* § 39

īra, 1, *anger, wrath*, § 15, § 27

is, ea, id, *that*, § 2 ; **is . . . quī,** *he . . . who,* **eī . . . quī,** *those . . . who,* § 51

Isca, 1, *Caerleon*, on the Usk, not far from Cardiff, § 5

ita, *thus, so*, § 21 ; *in such a way*, § 53

Ītalia, 1, *Italy*, § 6

itaque, *accordingly, therefore*, § 3

iter (itiner-), 3, n., *march*, § 39 ; iter faciō, *I march.* § 44

iterum, *a second time*, § 23

iubeō, 2, **iussī, iussus, a, um,** *I bid, command*, § 25

Iūdaeus, 2, *Jew*, § 32

iūdicō, 1, *I judge*, § 49

Iūnius, a, um, *of June*, § 56

iustus, a, um, *just*, § 10 ; *proper, regular*, § 13 (iustum proelium, *a pitched battle*)

iuvat (3rd pers. sing., present tense, 1st Conj.), *it delights*, § 17

K

Kalendae, 1, plur., *Calends*, the first day of each month, § 1

L

labor (labōr-), 3, *labour, toil*, § 35

labōrō, 1, *I labour, am in difficulties*, § 39

lāc (lact-), 3, n., *milk*, § 50

lacus, 4, *lake, pond* ; **Lacus Grāmineus,** *Graspan* (=Grass Pond), on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 44

laetitia, 1, *delight, happiness*, § 56

laevus, a, um, *left*; laeva, *left hand*, § 17

later, 3, *brick*, § 22

Latīnē, adv., *in Latin*

Latīnus, a, um, *Latin*, § 15

lātus, a, um, *wide, broad*, § 15

laudō, 1, *I praise*, § 16

laus (laud-), 3, *praise*, § 44

lectitō, 1, *I read*, § 1

lectus, 2, *bed*, § 29

lēgātus, 2, *lieutenant - general, general* [legate], § 38

legiō (-iōn-), 3, *legion* (about 5,000 men), § 9 ; *brigade* (consisting of four battalions, about 3,200 men), § 47

legō, 3, **lēgī, lectus, a, um,** *I read*, § 34

lentē, *slowly*, § 49

levis, e, 3, *light* : **equitēs Africānī levis armātūrae,** *Imperial Light Horse* (consisting of Outlanders of the Transvaal), § 38

libenter, *gladly, willingly*, § 17

liber, libr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, *book*, § 1

liber, lībera, līberum, *free* (sometimes with Abl. =*from*), § 4 ; *independent*, § 49

līberī, 2, pl., *children* (properly an adjective meaning " free ones," i.e. children of free-born parents), § 7

lībĕrō, 1, *I liberate, set free ;* **urbem obsidiōne līberō,** *I raise the siege of a town,* § 44

lībertās (-tāt-), 3, *liberty, freedom,* § 4

licet (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj. ; Perf. licuit), *it is allowed* (Dat., *to*), *it is lawful* (Dat., *for*), § 56. [Hence licentia, ' licence.']

lingua, 1, *tongue, language,* § 15

littera, 1, *letter* (of the alphabet), § 3 ; litterae (pl.), *literature, letters,* § 15 ; *a letter = an epistle,* § 31

litterārius, a, um, *connected with letters* (litterae), *literary,* § 15

lītus (lītor-), 3, *coast,* § 2

locus, 2, *place* (pl. loca, *n.*), or *passage of a book* (pl. locī, *m.*), § 1 ; locō, *in place, instead* (with Gen.)

Londinium, 2, *London,* § 9

longē, *far,* § 8

longinquus, a, um, *distant,* § 56

longus, a, um, *long,* § 2 ; longum, *a long story,* § 31

lūdus, 2, *game,* § 1 ; lūdus litterārius, *school,* § 15

Luguvallium, 2, *Carlisle,* § 11

lūna, 1, *moon,* § 29

lupus, 2, *wolf,* § 12

lux (lūc-), 3, *light,* § 55

M·

Macrifontium, 2, *Magersfontein* (= ' Lean *or* Meagre Fountain '), on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 45

magister, 2, *schoolmaster, teacher,* § 1

magnitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *magnitude, greatness,* § 49

magnopere (= magnō opere), *greatly,* § 10

magnus, a, um, *great, large,* § 2

māior (m., f.), māius (n.), (māiōr-) 3, *greater* [major, major-ity], § 15 ; Māior Britannia, *Greater Britain,* § 49 māiōrēs (plur.), *ancestors,* § 20

Maiūba, 1, *Majuba,* a hill on the northern frontier of Natal, § 35

Maiūbensis, e, 3, *of Majuba,* § 52

Mancuniensis, e, 3, *of Manchester* (Mancunium) ; Mancuniensēs *the Manchesters,* § 50

mandō, 1, *I commit, entrust,* § 5

māne (indeclinable), properly *in the morning,* § 1 ; *on the morning,* § 46 ; ā māne, *from morning,* § 30

maneō, 2, mansī, *I remain,* § 26

manūmissiō (-iōn-), 3, *manumission, liberation*

manus, 4, f., *hand,* § 23 ; *power, possession,* § 28 ; *band,* § 25

manūscriptus, a, um, *manuscript* (*written by the hand*)

Marcus, 2, *Mark,* § 1

mare, 3, *sea,* § 1

Mariānus, a, um, *Marian* ; **Castra Mariāna,** *Ladysmith,* the headquarters of the British forces in Natal ; so called after the wife of Sir Harry Smith. Her Christian names were *Juana Maria*

maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime,* § 11

Martiālis, 3, *Martial,* a Roman poet of the first century A.D., § 17, § 33

Martius, a, um, *of March,* § 53

māter (mātr-), 3, *mother,* § 38

maximē, *chiefly*

maximus, a, um, *greatest, very great* (Superlative of magnus, a, um), § 20

mē, *me,* § 1 ; mēcum, *with me*

mediocriter, *moderately, tolerably,* § 15

mediterrāneus, a, um, *midland, inland,* § 3 ; mediterrānea, pl., n., *the midlands*

medius, a, um, *mid, middle,* § 16

melior (m., f.), **melius** (n.), *better,* Comparative of bonus, a, um, § 18

membrum, 2, *limb* [member], § 33

memoria, 1, *memory,* § 10 ; memoriā teneō, *I remember,* § 24; **in memoriam** (with Gen.), *in memory (of),* § 55

mensis (Gen. Plur. mensium), 3, m., *month,* § 1

mercātor, 3, *merchant,* § 9

mereō, 2, meruī, meritus, a, um, *I merit, earn,* § 56

merīdiānus, a, um, *southern* (lit. *of the mid-day* ; see merīdiēs), § 2

merīdiēs, 5, m., *South* (lit. *mid-day*), § 50

meus (Voc. mī, § 17), mea, meum, *my,* § 1

migrō, 1, *I migrate,* § 19

mihi, *to me,* § 1

mīles (mīlit-), 3, *soldier,* § 13

mīlia, 3, *thousands,* § 9

mīlitāris, e, 3, *military :* **rēs mīlitāris,** *warfare,* § 35

mīlitō, 1, *I serve* (as a soldier), § 11

mille (indeclinable in the Singular ; Plural **mīlia,** declinable, § 9), *a thousand,* § 55

millēsimus, a, um, *thousandth,* § 56

minimus, a, um, Superlative of parvus, *smallest, least* ; **minimus natū,** *youngest* (lit. *least by birth*), § 49

minister, ministr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, *servant, minister,* § 25 ; *Minister of State,* § 31

ministrō, 1, *I attend* [minister], § 47 (tormentīs ministrō, *I serve the guns*)

minor (m., f.), **minus** (n.), Comparative of parvus, *smaller, less,* § 17

minus, adv., *less,* § 8 ; *not very,* § 45

mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, strange,* § 6

miser, misera, miserum, *unhappy, miserable, wretched,* § 14

misericordia, 1, *pity,* § 28

missile, 3, *missile,* § 13

mittō, 3, mīsī, missus, a, um, *I send* (sometimes = *I let go*), § 32

mōbilitās (-tāt-), 3, *mobility,* § 17

modus, 2, *manner, way,* § 13

Mōna, 1, *Isle of Anglesea,* § 7

mons (mont-), 3, m., *mountain,* § 5

monstrō, 1, *I show, point out,* § 2

monumentum, 2, *monument,* § 10

mora, 1, *delay,* § 18

mors (mort-), 3, *death,* § 3

mortifer, a, um, *death-bringing, deadly,* § 46 (compare frūgifer, aquili-fer, etc.)

mortuus, a, um, *dead,* § 7

mōs (mōr-), 3, *custom,* § 6 ; mōre suō, *according to his custom,* § 53

moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus, a, um, *I move* [motion] ; **hostem locō moveō,** *I move the enemy from his position, I dislodge the enemy,* § 54

mox, *in due course* (*soon*), § 29

multitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *multitude,* § 6

multus, a, um, *much :* multī, ae, a, *many,* § 2 ; multa, *many things,* § 1 ; multum (adv.), *much, very much,* § 1 ; *very.*

§ 34 ; multō, *by much* (multō plūs, *much more*, lit. *more by much*, § 36 ; multō ante, *much before, long before*, § 41)
mūlus, 2, *mule*, § 39

mūniō, 4, *I fortify*, § 40
mūrus, 2, *wall*, § 7
mūtātiō (-iōn-), 3, *change*, § 30
mūtātus, a, um, *changed*, § 17
mūtō, 1, *I change*, § 49

N

nam, *for*, § 1
narrō, 1, *I tell, narrate*, § 6
nātālis, e, *connected with birth :* **Terra Nātālis**, *the land of the Nativity, Natal*, so called because discovered on Christmas Day, § 36 ; **fēriae Nātālēs**, *Christmas holidays*, § 43
nātiō (-iōn-), 3, *tribe, nation*, § 16, § 21
natō, 1, *I swim, bathe*, § 1
nātus, 4, *birth*, § 49
nātus, a, um, *born*, § 3 ; *produced*, § 31 (cp. *native* oysters)
ante Christum nātum = B.C.
post Christum nātum = A.D.
sexāginta annōs nātus, *sixty years old*, § 48
nauta, 1, *sailor*
nāvālis, e, 3, *naval, belonging to the navy*, § 39
nāvigium, 2, *vessel, ship*, § 9
nāvigō, 1, *I sail* [navigate], § 23
nāvis (Gen. Plur. nāvium), 3, *ship*, § 11 ; nāvis longa, *ship of war*, § 36 ; nāvis āeria, *balloon*, § 50
-ne marks a question, § 16, § 21
nē, *not* (in expressions of desire), § 49 ; *lest* or *that . . . not*, § 52
nē . . . **quidem**, *not even . . .*, § 12
nebula, 1, *cloud*, § 50
nec, *nor, and not*, § 2
nec . . . nec, *neither . . . nor*, § 12
necesse (indeclinable), *necessary*, § 1 (Dat. = *for*, § 16)

ne-sciō, 4, *I do not know*, § 41
nexus, 4, *bond* [con-nexion], § 56
nīdus, 2, *nest*, § 44
nihil, *nothing*, § 2 ; nihil litterārum, *no letter*, § 43
nimis, *too*, § 18
nisi, *unless, if . . . not*, § 37 ; *except*
nōbīs, *to us*, § 6
nobīscum, *with us*, § 18
noctū, *by night, in the night-time*, § 51
nōmen (-min-), 3, *name* [nominal], § 3 ; *reputation*, § 48 ; *race* (nōmen Britannicum), § 48
nōminō, 1, *I name, call*, § 3
nōn, *not*, § 2
nōndum, *not yet*, § 5
nōn iam, *no longer, not any longer*
nōnne (= nōn + ne), *not ?* § 16
nonnullī, ae, a, *some* [nōn, *not*, nullī, *none*], § 1
nōnnumquam, *sometimes* (lit. *not never*), § 50
Nōnae, 1, plur., *Nones* (from nōnus, a, um ; lit. the ninth day before the Ides, according to the Roman method of reckoning ; the fifth or seventh day of the month), § 39
nōnāgēsimus, a, um, *ninetieth*, § 25
nōnus, a, um, *ninth*, § 10
nōs, *we* or *us, ourselves*, § 1
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*, § 1 ; nostrī, m. plur., *our men*, § 38
nōtitia, 1, *knowledge*, § 25

nōtus, a, um, *known*, § 19

novem (indeclinable), *nine*, § 6

November, bris, bre, 3, *of Novem-ber*, § 38

novus, a, um, *new*, § 4 ; quid novī, § 31 ; aliquid novī, § 37; nihil novī, § 49 ; novae rēs, *revolution*, § 35

nox (noct-), 3, *night*, § 13 : noctēs diēsque, *day and night*, § 43

nūdātus, a, um, *denuded, stripped*, § 8

nūdō, 1, *I strip, denude* (Abl. =*of*), § 8, § 47

nūdus, a, um, *naked, bare*, § 50

nullus, a, um (Gen. Sing. nullīus, Dat. nullī), *not any, no*, § 8

num, *whether*, marking a question, § 8

numerus, 2, *number*, § 2

nummus, 2, *coin*, § 1

numquam, *never*, § 8

nunc, *now*, § 12

nuntiō, 1, *I announce*, § 8 ; *report*, § 36

nuntius, 2, *messenger* (**nuntius verbī dīvīnī,** *missionary*, § 25) ; *message*, § 41

nūper, *recently, lately*, § 24

nusquam, adv., *nowhere*, § 46

O

oblīviō (-iōn-), 3, *oblivion, forget-fulness*, § 2 ; oblīviōni dō, *I consign to oblivion, I forget*, § 15

ob-ruō, 3, **-ruī,** *I bury*, § 56

obscūrō, 1, *I obscure, darken*, § 50

obscūrus, a, um, *obscure, dark*, § 1, § 23

ob-sessus, a, um, *besieged*, § 43 (heading)

ob-sideō, 2, **-sēdī, -sessus, a, um,** *I besiege*, lit. *sit down against*, § 23

ob-sidiō (-iōn-), 3, *siege*, § 50 ; **urbem obsidiōne līberō,** *I raise the siege of a town*, lit. *I free a town from siege*, § 44

ob-stō, -stāre, -stitī (with Dat.), *I stand against, resist*

ob-tineō, 2, **-tinuī, -tentus, a, um,** *I retain, maintain, keep hold of*, § 35. [The English word ' obtain ' comes from obtineō, but does not mean the same ; to ' obtain ' generally =' to get ']

occidens (occident-), 3, *the West*, § 12

occidentālis, e, 3, *western*, § 10

oc-cidō, 3, **-cidī,** *I set* (used of the sun, moon and stars ; from ob- and cadō, *I fall*), § 49

occultō, 1, *I hide*, § 5

occupō, 1, *I seize* [occupy], § 5

octāvus, a, um, *eighth* [octave] § 38

octingentēsimus, a, um, *eight hundredth*, § 56

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred*

octō (indeclinable), *eight*, § 44

October, bris, bre, 3, *of October*, § 31

octōgēsimus, a, um, *eightieth*, § 56

octōgintā, *eighty*, § 9

oculus, 2, *eye*, § 6 ; in oculīs, *in sight*, § 22

odium, 2, *hatred*, § 56

officium, 2, *duty*, § 56

ōlim, adv., *long ago, in the olden time*, § 56

ōmen (ōmin-), 3, *omen, sign* [omin-ous], § 8

omnia, Neut. Plur. of omnis, *all things, everything*

omnīnō *altogether*, § 27

omnis, 3, adj., *every* ; Plur. omnēs, m. and f., omnia, n., *all*, § 3

opera, 1, *attention, study*, § 1 ; operam dō ut, *I take pains that, I try to*, § 50

oportet (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. oportuit), *it behoves*, *it befits*: **oportet mē**, *I ought*, § 28

oppidum, 2, *town*, § 2

opportūnē, *fortunately*, *opportunely*, § 39

oppugnō, 1, *I attack*, § 9

optimē, *excellently*, *hurrah!* § 18

optimus, a, um, *best*, Superlative of bonus, a, um, § 15

opus (oper-), 3, *work* [oper-ation], § 49

  opus (with Abl.), *need*

  quid opus, *what need*

ōra, 1, *shore*, *coast*, § 11

Orangia, 1, *the Orange Free State*, *the Orange River Colony*, § 37

orbis, 3, m., *circle* [orb]; orbis terrārum = *the world*, § 4

ordō (-din-), 3, m., *rank* [ordinary], § 8

Ordovicēs, 2, a tribe of North Wales, § 5

oriens (orient-), 3, *the East* [oriental], § 12

orīgō (orīgin-), 3, *origin*, § 19; orīgine, *by origin*, § 34

oriundus, a, um, *sprung*, § 6

ornātus, 4, *adornment, attire*, § 50

ornātus, a, um, *ornamented, dressed*, § 50

ornō, 1, *I equip*, ad-orn, § 7

ostrea, 1, *oyster*, § 31

ovis (Gen. Plur. ovium), 3, *sheep*, § 50

ōvum, 2, *egg*, § 51

P

pācātus, a, um, *subdued, pacified*, § 12

pācificus, a, um, *peaceful, peace-giving* [pacific], § 56

pācō, 1, *I pacify, subdue*, § 10

paene, adv., *almost*, § 47

paenīnsula, 1, *peninsula* (paene, *almost*; insula, *island*), § 24

parātus, a, um, *prepared, ready*, § 29

parens (parent-), 3, *parent*, § 21

parō, 1, *I prepare*, § 5; *prepare for*, § 41

pars (part-), 3, *part*, § 1

parvus, a, um, *small, little*, § 25

passus, 4, *pace, yard*, § 23

pater (patr-), 3, *father*, § 3

patria, 1, *country, fatherland*, § 8

patrōcinium, 2, *protection*, § 35; *protectorate*, § 56

patruissimus, a, um (comic superlative from patruus), *kindest*, § 17

patruus, 2, *uncle*, § 1; *Oom*, § 31

paucī, ae, a, *a few*, § 5; *few*, § 30

paulātim, adv., *gradually*, § 15

paulum, *a little*, § 22

Paulus, 2, *Paul*, § 27

pavīmentum, 2, *pavement*, § 15

pax (pāc-), 3, *peace*, § 12

peccō, 1, *I sin*, § 27

pedes (pedit-), 3, *foot-soldier*, § 45

pedester, tris, tre, 3, *infantry* (used as an adj.), *pedestrian*, § 2

pellō, 3, **pepulī, pulsus, a, um,** *I drive*, ex-pel, § 35

penātēs (Gen. penātium), 3, plur., *household gods* = *home*, § 8

penetrō, 1, *I penetrate*, § 2

per (with Acc.), *through*, § 11; *during*, § 1; *along*, § 44

per-currō, 3, **-cucurrī** or **-currī,** *I overrun*, § 36

per-dō, 3, **-didī, -ditus, a, um,** *I destroy* [per-dition]; **aquam perdō,** *I waste time* (lit. *water*), § 32

peregrīnus, a, um, *foreign*, § 26

peregrīnus, 2, *foreigner*, § 32

perīculōsus, a, um, *perilous, dangerous*, § 48

perīculum, 2, *peril, danger*, § 12

perītus, a, um, *skilled* (Gen. =*in*),
§ 11

per-noctō, *I spend the night,* § 16

perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual, ever-
lasting,* § 12

per-tineō, 2, **-tinuī,** *I stretch,
extend,* § 23 ; **pertinet ad,** *it
concerns, pertains to,* § 32
(compare the word ' im-
-pertinent,' which properly
means ' not pertaining to,'
hence ' unbecoming ')

perturbō, 1, *I throw into disorder,*
§ 46

per-veniō, 4, **-vēnī,** *I arrive* (lit.
come through), § 42

pēs (ped-), 3, m., *foot,* § 22 ; pedi-
bus, *on foot,* § 45

Petreius collis, *Pieters Hill,* North
of the Tugela and to the
South-East of Ladysmith, § 55

pharus, 2, f. *light-house,* § 23

Pictī, 2, 'plur., *Picts,* § 19

pictus, a, um, *painted* ; tabula
picta, *picture,* § 1

piget (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj. ;
Perf. piguit), *it vexes* ; **mē
piget,** *it vexes me, I am sorry,*
§ 23 ; **mē nōn piget,** *I don't
mind,* § 22

pila, 1, *ball* [pill], § 17 ; *cricket ball,*
§ 30

pius, a, um, *loving* [pious], § 56

plēnus, a, um, *full,* § 29 ; with
Gen. § 56, with Abl. *filled,* § 50

plērumque, *mostly, generally,* § 1

plūrimus, a, um, *very much,* § 38
(Superlative of multus)

plūs (plūr-), *more* [hence ' Plural'],
§ 32

poēta, 1, *poet,* § 4

Pompōnia Graecīna, wife of Aulus
Plautius, § 27

pondus (ponder-), 3, *weight,* § 9

pōnō, 3, **posuī, positus, a, um,** *I
place* [position], § 40

pons (pont-), 3, m., *bridge* ; **Fons
Aelius,** *Newcastle,* § 20

pontifex (pontific-), 3, *pontiff,
pope,* § 25

populus, 2, *a people,* § 6

porcus, 2, *pig* [pork], § 50

porta, 1, *gate* (of a city)

portentum, 2, *portent, marvel,* § 8

portō, 1, *I carry,* § 18

portus, 4, *port, harbour,* § 23 ;
Portus Nātālis, *Durban,* § 42

possum (=pot-sum), posse (=pot-
esse), potuī, *I am able,* § 3

post (with Acc.),*after,*§1; *since,*§ 48

posteā, adv., *afterwards,* § 20

posterus, a, um, *next,* § 55 ;
posterior (m., f.), **posterius**
(n.), *later,* § 16

postquam, *after* =*after the time
when,* § 2 ; *since,* § 25

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally,* § 53

postrīdiē, *on the next day,* § 13

prae-beō, 2, **prae-buī, prae-bitus,
a, um,** *I provide, afford,* § 23
(=prae-hibeō, etc., from
habeō, lit. *I hold forth*)

praecipitō, 1, *I hurl down* [pre-
cipitate], § 8 ; praecipitans,
knocking down, § 39

praecipuē, adv., *chiefly, especially,*
§ 34

praecipuus, a, um, *chief, special,
particular,* § 24

praeclārus, a, um, *very famous,
splendid,* § 12

praeda, 1, *prey, booty,* § 9

praefectus, 2, *officer* [prefect] ;
president, § 31 ; *governor of
a colony,* § 36

prae-mitto, 3, **-mīsī, -missus, a,
um,** *I send forward,* § 45

prae-nōmen (-nōmin-), 3, *fore-
name, Christian name*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, *I exhibit,
show,* § 6 ; *render,* § 49

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī (with Dat.),
*I am in command (of), am at
the head (of),* § 3

Praetōria, 1, *Pretoria,* the capital
of the Transvaal, § 56

prandium, 2, *lunch*, § 1

pretium, 2, *price*, § 50 (grandī pretiō, *at a high price*)

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before*, § 16 ; with Acc., § 42

prīmō, *at first*, § 13

prīmus, a, um, *first*, § 1

princeps (princip-), 3, *emperor*, § 2 ; *prince, chieftain*, § 15

principātus, 4, *headship, sovereignty*, § 35; *principate, reign* (of a ' princeps '), § 27

principia, 2, plur., *headquarters*

prior (priōr-), 3, *previous* [prior], § 5

prō (with Abl.), *instead of, for*, § 7 ; *for the sake of*, § 4

procella, 1, *storm* ; Mons Procellārum, *Stormberg*, in the north of Cape Colony, § 46 Prōmunturium Procellārum, *Cape of Storms*, the old name of the Cape of Good Hope, § 48

procul, *far*, § 22 ; *afar*, § 26

prō-currō, 3, **-cucurrī** or **-currī**, *I run forward, I charge*, § 38

proelium, 2, *battle*, § 5

pro-festus, a, um, *not holy, not festal* ; **diēs profestus**, *a working-day*, § 30

pro-fundō, 3, **-fūdī**, **-fūsus**, a, um, *I pour out, shed* [profuse], § 54

pro-hibeō, 2, **-hibuī**, **-hibitus**, a, um (from habeō ; lit. *I hold at a distance*), *I prohibit, forbid*, with Infin., § 26 ; *I prevent*, with Infin., § 36 ; with Abl. (=*from*), § 52 ; with nē, *lest, that*, § 52

prōmissum, 2, *promise*, § 26

prō-mittō, -mīsī, -missus, a, um, *I promise*, § 37

prōmunturium, 2, *promontory*, § 22 ; *cape*, § 41

prope (with Acc.), *near*, § 9 ; *nearly*, § 49

properō, 1, *I hasten*, § 9 ; *I act rapidly*, § 53 (different in meaning from festīnō, *I hurry* =act without sufficient thought)

propior, propius, *nearer*, § 53

prōpositum, 2, *proposal*, § 18

propter (with Acc.), *on account of*, § 5

prōpulsō, 1, *I drive off, keep off, repel*, § 12

prosperē, *successfully*, *prosperously*, § 56

prosperus, a, **um**, *successful, prosperous*, § 31 ; **rēs prosperae**, *success, prosperity*, § 48

prō-sum, -esse, -fuī (with Dat.), *I am helpful, do good*, § 48

prōverbium, 2, *proverb, familiar saying*, § 41

prōvincia, 1, *province*, § 10

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next*, § 11 ; *last, preceding*, § 39

pruīna, 1, *frost*, § 54

puer, 2, *boy*, § 17

pugna, 1, *fight, battle*, § 12

pugnans (pugnant-), 3, adj., *fighting*, § 56

pugnō, 1, *I fight*, § 4

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *fine, beautiful, glorious*, § 10

pulchrē, *beautifully, gloriously*

pulvis (pulver-), 3, m., *dust, cloud of dust*, § 51

punctum, 2, *point* [punct-ual] ; **punctum temporis**, *a moment*, § 46

puteus, 2, *well*, § 23 ; *pit*, § 43

putō, 1, *I fancy, think, suppose*, § 56

Q

quadrāgēsimus, a, **um**, *fortieth*, § 3

quadrāgintā (indeclinable), *forty*, § 22

quadrātus, a, um, *square, four-cornered,* § 23 ; **agmine quad-rātō,** *in quarter column,* § 46
quadringentēsimus, a, um, *four hundredth,* § 24
quadringentī, ae, a, *four hundred,* § 22
quaesō, 3, *I pray,* or *please (tell me),* § 32
quaestiō (-iōn-), 3, *question, enquiry,* § 19
quam, *how,* § 30 ; *as ; than,* § 14
quamquam, *although,* § 2
quando, *when,* § 18
quantopere, *how much,* § 18
quantus, a, um, *how great,* § 56 ; tantus . . . quantus, *so great . . . as,* § 48
quartus, a, um, *fourth,* § 3
quartus decimus, *fourteenth,* § 3
quattuor, *four,* § 2
quattuordecim, *fourteen*
quī, quae, quod, *which ?* or *what ?,* § 19
quī, quae, quod, *who, which,* § 20
quia, *because,* § 1

qui-dam, quae-dam, quod-dam, *a certain,* § 35
quingentēsimus, a, um, *five hundredth,* § 25
quingentī, ae, a, *five hundred,* § 44
quinquāgēsimus, a, um, *fiftieth*
quinquāgintā (indecl.), *fifty,* § 20
quinque, *five,* § 30
quintus, a, um, *fifth,* § 7
quintus decimus, *fifteenth,* § 3
quis (m., f.), **quid** (n.), *who ?, what ?,* §§ 14, 15, 19 ; *anyone, anything;* **num quid,** *whether anything ?,* §§ 31 ; **nē quid,** *lest anything,* § 52
quis-que, quae-que, quid-que or **quod-que,** *each, each one,* § 56
quō, *whither, to which,* § 42
quod, *that,* § 23
quondam, *once on a time, formerly,* § 22
quoque, *too, also,* § 3
tum quoque, *then too, even then*
quota hōra est ? *what o'clock is it ?,* § 18
quotā hōrā, *at what o'clock ?,* § 18

R

re-belliō (-iōn-), 3, *renewal of war* [rebellion], § 8
re-bellō, 1, *I renew war* [rebel], § 7
re-cipiō, 3, **-cēpī, -ceptus, a, um,** *I betake* (mē, *myself*), § 43 ; *I withdraw,* § 44 ; *I recover, rescue,* § 47 ; *I receive,* § 56
recitō, 1, *I read aloud* [recite], § 1
recreō, 1, *I refresh* (mē, *myself*), § 22
rectē, *rightly,* § 16 ; *right !,* § 28
red-ambulō, 1, *I walk back,* § 29
red-dō, 3, **-didī, -ditus, a, um,** *I deliver* (lit. *I give back* ; red-=re-), § 38 (note) ; *I render,* § 54
re-dūcō, 3, **-duxī, -ductus, a, um,** *I lead back* [reduce, reduction], § 39

rēgīna, 1, *queen,* § 3
regiō (-iōn-), 3, *region, district,* § 11
rēgius, a, um, *royal,* § 31
regnō, 1, *I reign,* § 3
regnum, 2, *kingdom* [reign], § 3
reliquiae, 1, pl., *relics, remains,* § 5
reliquus, a, um, *the rest, the remaining*
remōtus, a, um, *remote,* § 4
re-moveō, 2, **-mōvī, -mōtus, a, um,** *I remove* [remote], § 27
re-portātus, a, um, *carried off, won,* § 5
re-portō, 1, *I carry off* (or *back*), *win,* § 2
rēs, 5, *thing, affair,* § 30 ; **rēs publica** (rēspublica), *common-*

wealth, republic, § 31 ; **rē vērā** (rēvērā), *in reality, really,* § 32 ; rēs =rēspublica, § 49

re-scrībō, 3, **-scrīpsī, -scrīptus, a, um,** *I write back,* § 43

re-servō, 1, *I reserve,* § 34

re-spondeō, 2, **-spondī, -sponsus, a, um,** *I answer, respond* [response], § 22

re-stituō, 3, **-stituī, -stitūtus, a, um,** *I restore* [restitution], § 49

re-surgō, 3, **surrexī,** *I rise again* [resurrection], § 56

re-tardō, 1, *I retard, delay, impede* (from tardus, a, um, *slow, tardy*), § 6

rēvērā, *really,* § 2 (or, as two words, rē vērā, § 32)

re-vinciō, 4, **-vinxī, -vinctus, a, um,** *I bind fast,* § 56

re-vocō, 1, *I recall* [revoke], § 28 ; *call off, withdraw,* § 15, § 28 ; *pick up, catch,* § 17

rex (rēg-), 3, *king,* § 3

Rhēnus, 2, *the Rhine,* § 33

rīdeō, 2, **rīsī,** *I laugh,* § 22, § 24

rīpa, 1, *bank,* § 44

rītus, 4, *manner* [rite], § 56

rōbur (rōbor-), 3, *oak, strength,* § 36

rōbustus, a, um, *robust, sturdy,* § 33

rogō, 1, *I ask,* § 52

Rōma, 1, *Rome,* § 5

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman,* § 2

rūfus, a, um, *reddish* [hence 'William Rufus'], § 33

ruīnae, 1, pl., *ruins,* § 18

Rutupiae, 1, pl., Richborough, § 18

Rutupīnus, a, um, *belonging to Richborough,* § 18

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred,* § 27

saeculum, 2, *century,* § 16

saepe, *often,* § 1

saevus, a, um, *savage, cruel,* § 12

saltus, 4, *mountain-pass,* § 46 ; Saltus Cervīnus, *Elands-laagte* (=Stag's lair), in the North of Natal, § 38

salūs (salūt-), 3, *health, welfare* ; **salūtem dīcō,** *I send greeting,* § 37 ; *deliverance,* § 53 ; **annō salūtis** *in the year of grace,* § 56

salūtō, 1, *I salute, greet,* § 56

salveō, 2, *I am safe and sound, I am in good health* ; **salvē** (plur. **salvēte**), *hail !,* § 22

salvus, a, um, *safe and sound ;* **salvum praestō,** *I render safe and sound, I save,* § 49, § 50 ; **salvus sīs,** *may you be safe and sound !=God bless you !,* § 51

sanctus, a, um, *holy,* § 27 ; **Sanctus,** 2, *Saint,* § 23

sanguis (sanguin-), 3, m., *blood* [sanguin-ary, con-sanguin-ity] § 34

satiō, 1, *I satisfy,* § 12

satis, *enough,* § 2 ; *sufficiently, pretty well,* § 17

Saxō (Saxon-), 3, *Saxon,* § 24

schola, 1, *school,* § 40 ; pl. *lessons,* § 1

scientia, 1, *science, knowledge,* § 9

sciō, 4, **scīvī,** *I know,* § 41 ; vincere sciō, *I know how to conquer,* § 51

Scōtus, 2, *Scot,* § 19

scrībō, 3, **scrīpsī, scrīptus, a, um,** *I write* [script =a thing written ; scribe =a writer, lawyer], § 32

scriptor (scriptōr-), 3, *writer,* § 3

sē, *himself, herself, itself*, § 9 ;
    themselves, § 11 ; inter sē,
    among themselves
secundus, a, um, *second*, § 2
sed, *but*, § 2
sedeō, 2, sēdī, *I sit*, § 22
Segedūnum, 2, *Wall's End* (=End
    of the Roman Wall), § 20
sēmi-hōra, 1, *half an hour* (sēmi-
    =*half*, as in 'semicircle,'
    'semicolon,' etc.), § 49
sēmi-somnus, a, um, *half-asleep*
    (sēmi-, *half* ; somnus, *sleep*),
    § 49
semper, adv., *always*, § 24
senex (sen-em, -is, -ī, -e, etc.),
    old man, § 17
sententia, 1, *sentence*
sēparō, 1, *I separate*, § 4
septem (indecl.), *seven*, § 5
September, bris, bre, 3, *of Septem-
    ber*, § 1
septentriōnālis, e, 3, *northern*, § 10
septentriōnēs, 3, plur., m., *the
    North* (properly, the seven
    stars of Charles' Wain), § 39
septimus, a, um, *seventh*, § 6
septimus decimus, *seventeenth*, § 51
septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred*,
    § 46
septuāgintā, *seventy*, § 9
sepulchrum, 2, *tomb, sepulchre*,
    § 56
serēnus, a, um, *clear* [serene], § 18
sermō (sermōn-), 3, *speech, con-
    versation, talk* [sermon], § 26
sērō, *late, too late*, § 41
servitūs (servitūt-), 3, *slavery,
    servitude*, § 2
servō, 1, *I preserve, keep, watch*,
    § 9
servus, 2, *slave*, § 7
sescentī (for sex-centī), ae, a, *six
    hundred*, § 55
sexāgēsimus, a, um, *sixtieth*, § 7
sexāgintā (indecl.), *sixty*, § 22
sextus, a, um, *sixth*, § 11
sī, *if*, § 6

sīc, *so, thus*, § 9 ; *as follows*, § 22
sīcut, *as* (lit. *so as, just as*), § 33
significātiō (-iōn-), 3, *signification,
    meaning*
significō, 1, *I signify, mean*, § 24 ;
    I express, § 53
signum, 2, *sign*, § 13 ; *flag,
    standard*, § 11 ; *badge*, § 34
silentium, 2, *silence*, § 13
sileō, 2, siluī, *I am silent* ; passive,
    silētur, *it is silenced*, § 30
Silurēs, 3, *Silures*, a tribe of South
    Wales, § 5
silva, 1, *wood, forest*, § 5
simulācrum, 2, *image*, § 7, § 27
sine (with Abl.), *without*, § 18
singulāris, e, 3, *singular, strange,
    unique*, § 37
sinister, tra, trum, *left* [sinister],
    § 44
situs, a, um, *situated*, § 22
societās (-tāt-), 3, *alliance, society,
    union*, § 34 ; Societās Āfricāna,
    Africander Bond, § 35
socius, 2, *ally*, § 56
sōl, 3, *the sun*, § 49
sōlitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *solitude,
    desert*, § 12
solitus, a, um, *usual*, § 51 (solitō
    densior, *denser than usual*)
solum, 2, *soil*, § 23
sōlum, *only* ; nōn sōlum . . . sed
    etiam, *not only . . . but also*,
    § 16
sōlus, a, um, (Gen. Sing. sōlīus,
    Dat. Sing. sōlī), *alone*, § 56
somnium, 2, *dream*, § 35
somnus, 2, *sleep*, § 43
spectāculum, 2, *spectacle, show*,
    § 6 ; *sight*, § 29
spectō, 1, *I look, watch, gaze at,
    see*, § 6
spērō, 1, *I hope*, § 12
spēs, 5, *hope*, § 41 ; *promise*, § 47
spīritus, 4, *pride, airs* [spirit],
    § 35
stābilitās (-tāt-), 3, *stability, stead-
    fastness*, § 45

statim, adv., *immediately, at once,* § 18

statiō (-iōn-), 3, *station, sentry-duty,* § 51 ; Statiō Bechuān-ārum, *Mafeking,* in Bechuana-land, § 43

stō, stāre, stetī, 1, *I stand,* § 8

studeō, 2, **studuī,** *I am eager* (Dat. =*for*), § 35

studium, 2, *eagerness, study, pur-suit,* § 15 ; plur. studia, *studies,* § 1

stultitia, 1, *folly,* § 37

sub (with Abl.), *under,* § 11 ; *down in* ; (with Acc.), *down into, down to, down along,* § 23 ; *towards,* § 38

subiectus, a, um, *subject,* § 3

subitō, *suddenly,* § 39

subministrō, 1, *I supply,* § 4

subterrāneus, a, um, *subterranean, underground,* § 23

Suēbī, 2, plur., *Swabians,* § 24

Suētōnius Paulīnus, 2, a Roman general of the time of Nero, § 7

Suētōnius Tranquillus, 2, a Roman writer of the second century A.D., § 3

sum, esse, fuī, *I am,* § 1

summus, a, um, *highest, chief,* § 10 ; *greatest, very great,* § 37

sūmō, 3, **sumpsī, sumptus, a, um,** *I assume, take,* § 35 ; *I under-take,* § 56

super (with Acc.), *over, above,* § 46

superior (superiōr-), 3, comp. adj., *previous, past ; superior, vic-torious*

superō, 1, *I overcome,* § 5 ; *I sur-pass, am superior,* § 9 ; *I sur-mount,* § 44

superstitiō (-iōn-), 3, *superstition,* § 27

sus-tineō, 2, **-tinuī, -tentus, a, um,** *I sustain, endure,* (from sub-and teneō), § 54

suus, a, um, *his* (or *his own*), *her* (or *her own*), *its* (or *its own*), *their* (or *their own*), § 2 ; suī, *his* (or *their*) *men,* § 9, § 13

T

tabula, 1, *tablet, plate* ; **tabula picta,** *picture,* § 1

Tacitus, 2, a Roman historian, § 1

Talāna, 1, a hill near Dundee, in Natal, § 38

tam, *so,* § 43

tamen, *nevertheless, however,* § 1

Tamesa, 1, m., *Thames,* § 2 ; Caesar calls the river ' Tame-sis ' (3rd Decl.), but Tacitus calls it ' Tamesa ' (1st Decl.)

Tanatis (Acc. Tanatim ; Abl. Tanatī), 3, *Thanet,* § 24

tandem, *at length,* § 5

tantum, *so much,* or *only,* § 8, § 24

tantus, a, um, *so great,* § 4

Tasciovānus, 2, a British king, § 3

Tasmania, 1, *Tasmania,* § 49

tē, *thee, you* ; tēcum, *with thee, with you*

templum, 2, *temple,* § 7

tempus (tempor-), 3, *time* [*tempor-ary*], § 2 ; ad tempus, *at the right time, in time,* § 22 ; in ipsō tempore, *in the nick of time,* § 39

tenebrae, 1, plur., *darkness,* § 39 ; Rex Tenebrārum, *the Devil,* § 28

teneō, 2, tenuī, **tentus, a, um,** *I hold,* § 23

ter, adv., *three times, thrice,* § 54

terra, 1, *land,* § 4

terribilis, e, 3, *terrible,* § 38

terror (terrōr-), 3, *terror, panic,* § 39

tertius, a, um, *third*, § 2

tertius decimus, *thirteenth*, § 2

tessellātus, a, um, *tesselated, made of mosaic work*, § 15 (from tessella, *a small cube*)

testimōnium, 2, *testimony, evidence*, § 10

Tiberius, 2, *Tiberius*, the second Roman emperor, § 2

Togodumnus, 2, a son of Cunobelinus, § 3

tolerō, 1, *I tolerate, endure, bear*, § 2

tonitrus, 4, m., *thunder*, § 46

tormentum, 2, *hurling machine, gun*, § 38

tot (indeclin. adj.), *so many*, § 49

tōtus, a, um (Gen. Sing. tōtīus, Dat. Sing. tōtī), *whole*, § 4

trā-dō, 3, -didī, -ditus, a, um, *I hand down*, lit. *give across* [tradition], § 56

trahō, 3, traxī, tractus, a, um, *I drag, draw*, § 39 [traction engine]

trāiciō (= trā-iiciō), 3, -iēcī, -iectus, a, um, *I throw across*, § 44 : *I cross*, § 54

trans (with Acc.), *across*, § 11

transportō, 1, *I transport*, § 2

trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred*, § 46

tredecim (indecl.), *thirteen*, § 25

tremō, 3, tremuī, *I tremble*, § 38

trēs (m., f.), tria (n.), Gen. trium ; Dat., Abl. tribus; *three*, § 13, § 30

tribūtum, 2, *tribute*, § 2

trīcēsimus, a, um, *thirtieth*, § 6

triclinium, 2, *dining-room*

trīgintā (indecl.), *thirty*, § 22

trigōn, 3, m. (a Greek word), *ball, tennis ball*, § 30

trigōnālis, e, *of* (or *connected with*) *the tennis ball*, § 1

Trinobantēs, 3, plur., a tribe in Essex, § 7

triplex (triplic-), 3, adj., *triple*, § 36

Trisantona, 1, m., *the Trent* ; see map of *Britannia Romana*. The form 'Trisantona' is uncertain, depending on the reading of a passage in Tac. Ann., xii. 31

tristis, e, 3, *sad*, § 30 : *bitter*, § 56

triumphālis, e, 3, *triumphal*, § 55

triumphō, 1, *I triumph, exult*, § 9

trucīdātiō (-iōn-), 3, *slaughter*, § 13

trucīdō, 1, *I slaughter, murder*, § 7

tū, *thou, you* (Sing.), § 17

Tugēla, 1, m., *the Tugela*, a river in Natal, § 47

tum, *then* (=*at that time* or *thereupon*), § 6

tumultus, 4, *tumult*, § 38

tumulus, 2, *rising ground, kopje*, § 44

turbulentus, a, um, *turbulent, unsettled*, § 10 ; Flūmen Turbulentum, *the Modder River* (in the Orange River Colony : 'Modder' =*mud*), § 44

turpis, e, 3, *disgraceful*, § 56

turris (Gen. Plur. turrium), 3, *tower, turret*, § 22

tūtus, a, um, *safe*, § 12

tuus, a, um, *thy, your*

U

ubi, *where*, § 1

ullus, a, um, *any* (Gen. Sing. ullīus, Dat. Sing. ullī)

ultimus, a, um, *last* [ultimate], § 1 : litterae ultimae, *a final despatch* =*an ultimatum*, § 37

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time*, § 14

ūnā, *together* ; ūnā cum, *together with*, § 6

unda, 1, *wave*, § 36

unde, *whence*, § 26

undecim (indecl.), *eleven*, § 13

undecimus, a, um, *eleventh*

undētrīcēsimus, a, um, *twenty-ninth*, § 33

undēvīgintī (indecl.), *nineteen*, § 52

undique, adv., *on all sides*, § 39

ūniversus, a, um, *all together* [universal]

ūnus, a, um (Gen. Sing. ūnīus, Dat. Sing. ūnī), *one*, § 5

urbs (urb-), 3, *city* [urban], § 5

usque ad, *right on to*, § 11

ūsus, 4, *use*, § 23 (**ūsuī**)

ut, *how*, § 22, § 31 ; *as*, § 3 ; ut possum, *as best I can*, § 38, § 46 ; with the Subjunctive, *that, in order that*, § 50 ; *so that*, § 50

ūtilis, e, 3, *useful*, § 15

uxor (uxōr-), 3, *wife*, § 6

V

vacca, 1, *cow*, § 50

vadum, 2, *shallow place, shoal, ford, 'drift,'* § 41

Vahalis, 3, m., *Vaal* (a river in Holland and in South Africa), § 32

valeō, 2, **valuī,** *I fare well, am in good health, am strong* ; valēre iubeō, *I bid farewell* (lit. *to fare well*), § 23 ; vale (plur. valēte), *farewell*, § 30 ; ut valēs ? *how do you do ?*, § 31 ; multum valet, *avails much*, § 34

validus, a, um, *strong*, § 49

vallum, 2, *rampart, earthen wall*, § 20

vastō, 1, *I lay waste* [de-vast-ate], § 7

vastus, a, um, *wild, waste* [vast]

Vectis, 3, (Acc. Sing., Vectim ; Abl. Sing., Vectī), *Isle of Wight*, § 15

vehiculum, 2, *vehicle, cart*, § 9, *carriage*, § 18

vel, *or*, § 1

velut, *as, even as, as it were* [vel *even* ; ut, *as*], § 11

venerābilis, e, 3, *venerable*, § 27

venia, 1, *pardon, mercy*, § 6

veniō, 4, **vēnī,** *I come*, § 40

Venta Belgārum, 1, *Winchester*, § 34

vēnum-dō, -dare, -dedī, *I sell*, § 2 [vēnum, *for sale ;* dō, *I offer*]

verbum, 2, *word*, § 11, § 25 ; suīs verbīs = *in his name*, § 52

vērē, adv., *truly*, § 6

Vergilius, 2 (**Publius Vergilius Marō**), a Roman poet of the age of Augustus, § 4

vērius, compar. adv., *more truly*, § 56

vērō, *but ; but in truth*, § 42

versus, 4, *verse*, § 38

vertō, 3, **vertī, versus, a, um,** *I turn* ; bene vertat, *may it turn out well*, § 56

Verulāmium, 2, *St. Albans*, in Hertfordshire, twenty miles from London

vērus, a, um, *true*, § 10 ; vēra, *the truth* (lit. *true things*), § 11 ; vērō, *in truth*, § 42

vesper, 2, *evening*, § 30 [vespers]

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (of several persons), § 12

vestibulum, 2, *vestibule, entrance hall*

vestīmentum, 2, *garment* [vestment], § 50

veterānus, 2, *veteran, old soldier*, § 5

vexillum, 2, *standard, flag*, § 38

vexō, 1, *I annoy, vex*, § 2

via, 1 *road, way*, § 1 ; dē viā, *from the road* ; in viam mē dō, *I give myself to the road, I start*, § 18 ; inter viam, *on the journey*, § 19

vīcēsimus, a, um, *twentieth*, § 39

victitō, 1, *I live*, § 50

victor (victōr-), 3, *victor*, § 14

victōria, 1, *victory*, § 2

Victōriānus, a, um, *Victorian;* crux Victōriāna, *the Victoria Cross*, instituted by Queen Victoria for conspicuous bravery, § 56

victrix (victrīc-), 3, adj., fem., *victorious*, § 5

videō, 2, vīdī, vīsus, a, um, *I see*, § 22; videō nē, *I see to it that . . . not*, § 52, § 56

vīgintī (indeclinable), *twenty*, § 22

villa, 1, *country-house, villa*, § 15

vincō, 3, vīcī, victus, a, um, *I conquer, defeat*, § 35

vir, 2, *man*, § 2

Vīrocōnium, 2, *Uriconium (Wroxeter)*, near Shrewsbury, § 5

virtūs (virtūt-), 3, *pluck, courage* [virtue], § 4

vīs, 3, Acc. vim, § 54; Abl. vī, § 50, *violence, force*: Plur. vīr-ēs, -ium, -ibus, *strength*

vīsitō, 1, *I visit*, § 1

vīta, 1, *life*, § 1; Vīta Agricolae, *the Life of Agricola*, a work by Tacitus

vītō, 1, *I avoid*, § 13

vīvō, 3, vixī, *I live*

vix, *scarcely, hardly*, § 43

vōbīs, *to you*; vōbīscum, *with you*

vocans (vocant-), 3, *calling*, § 42

vocō, 1, *I call*, § 4; *I summon*, § 8

volō, 1, *I fly*, § 9

voluntārius, 2, *volunteer* [voluntary], § 49

vōs (Nom. and Acc.), *you*, § 6

vox (vōc-), 3, *voice*, § 49

vulnerō, 1, *I wound*, § 13; vulnerātus, a, um, *wounded*, § 38

vulnus (vulner-), 3, *wound* [vulnerable], § 54

Z

Zelanda, 1, *Zealand*; 'Nova Zeelanda' was the name given by Tasman to *New Zealand*, § 49

II. ENGLISH-LATIN

Nearly all the words contained in the Exercises have occurred in previous passages of the text of *Pro Patria* and ought therefore to be familiar to the pupil. The object of this Vocabulary is simply to put him on the track of the word, if he has forgotten it : and, accordingly, the minimum of information is given here. In the case of a few words, however, introduced from *Ora Maritima* or not appearing in either book, the declension or conjugation is indicated.

able ; I am—, *possum ;*
  to be—, *posse*
about (Prep.), *dē ;*
  (Adv.) *circiter*
accordingly, *itaque*
accuse, *accūsāre*
across, *trans*
admit, *admittere*
adorn, *ornāre*
affirm, *affirmāre*
afraid, I am, *formīdō*
after (Prep.), *post ;*
  (=after the time when), *postquam*
afterwards, *posteā*
against, *contrā*
age, *aetās*
air, *āēr*
all, *omnēs*
already, *iam*
also, *etiam ;* but also, *sed etiam*
although, *quamquam*
always, *semper*
among, *in numerō* (with gen.), or *inter*
amphitheatre, *amphitheātrum*
ancient, *antīquus*
angel, *angelus*
angle, *angulus*
Angles, *Anglī*
Annals, *Annālēs*
annoy, *vexāre*
another, *alius, alia, aliud,* or *alter, a, um*
answer, *respondēre*
any longer, *iam*
arms, *arma*
army, *exercitus*

around, *circum*
arrival, *adventus*
arrive, *adventāre,* or *advenīre* (after § 41)
as, *ut,* or *sīcut*
ascend, *ascendere*
at once, *statim*
at the present day, *hodiē*
attack, *impetus*
attack, to, *oppugnāre*
attendant, *minister*
attention, *opera*
August, *Augustus*
aunt, *amita*
avoid, *vītāre*
await, *exspectāre*
away, to be, *abesse*

ball, *pila*
balloon, *nāvis āeria*
barbarians, *barbarī*
barbarous, *barbarus*
baths, *balneae*
battalion, *cohors*
battle, *proelium*
beautiful, *pulcher*
because, *quia*
before, *ante*
begin, *incipere*
beginning, *initium*
behoves, it, *oportet*
Belgian, *Belga*
Belgium, *Belgium*
bell, *tintinnābulum*
beloved, *cārissimus*
besiege, *obsidēre*
best, *optimus*
betake oneself, *sē recipere*

better, *melior, melius*
between, *inter*
bid, *iubeō*
big, *magnus*
bird, *avis* (fem.)
black, *niger*
blue, *caeruleus*
body (=troop), *manus*
Boer, *Batāvus*
book, *liber*
booty, *praeda*
born, *nātus*
boundaries, *fīnēs*
boy, *puer*
brave, *fortis*
bravo, *eugē*
breakfast, *ientāculum*
bright, *clārus*
bring up, *apportāre*
Britain, *Britannia*
British, *Britannicus*
Briton, *Britannus*
brother, *frāter*
build, to, *aedificāre*
building, *aedificium*
burn, to, *cremāre*
but, *sed*
by, *ā (ab) ;* = near, *ad*

Caledonian (adj.),*Calēdonius*; Caledonians, the, *Calēdonēs*
call, to, *vocāre*
calm, *tranquillus*
camp, *castra*
can, I, *possum*
cannon, *tormentum*
cape, *prōmunturium*
capital, *caput*
captive, *captīvus*

capture, *captāre*
carry off, *dēportāre*
cause, *causa*
cavalry, *equester* (adj.)
Celts, *Celtae*
century, *saeculum*
channel, *fretum*
chapter, *caput*
charge, to, *prōcurrere*
chariot, *essedum*
cheerful, *hilarus*
chief, *summus*
children, *līberī*
Christ, *Christus*
Christian, *Christiānus*
church, *basilica*
Cicero, *Cicerō* (*-ōn-*)
citizen, *cīvis*
citizenship, *cīvitās*
city, *urbs*
civil war, *bellum domesticum*
civilized, *hūmānus*
climb up, *ascendere*
cloak, *chlamys* (*chlamyd-*), 3
cloud of dust, *pulvis*
coast, *lītus*
cohort, *cohors*
coin, *nummus*
Colchester, *Camulodūnum*
collect, *colligō*
colonel, *praefectus*
colony, *colōnia*
come, *venīre*
command, *imperium*
command, to be in, *prae-esse* (of, Dat.)
commander, *imperātor*
commander in chief, *imperātor summus*
commerce, *mercātūra*, 1
compel, *cōgere*
conquer, *vincere*
conquered, *dēbellātus*
conqueror, *victor*
conversation, *sermō*

cost, to, *cōnstāre*
cottage, *casa*
country(=native land) *patria*
country house, *villa*
courage, *audācia*
course, *cursus*
coward, *ignāvus*
cowardly, *ignāvus*
create, *creāre*
cross, to, *trāicere*
cruel, *crūdēlis*
cube, *tessella*, 1

danger, *perīculum*
dangerous, *perīculōsus*
daughter, *fīlia*
day, *diēs*
dear, *cārus*
death, *mors*
December, *December*
declare, *dēclārāre* or *affirmāre*; declare war, *bellum indīcere*
defeat, *superāre* or *vincere* (after § 38)
defend, *dēfendere*
defender, *dēfensor*
delight, *dēlectāmentum*
delight, to, *dēlectāre*
desire, to, *cupere*
desirous, *cupidus*
destroy, *dēlēre*
devastate, *vastāre*
die, *exspīrāre*
difficult, *difficilis*
dig, *fodere*
dig up, *excavāre*
dining room, *triclinium*, 2
disaster, *clādēs*
distant, *remōtus*; to be—, *distāre*
distinguished, *insignis* or *clārus*
ditch, dyke, *fossa*
divide, *dīvidere*
do, *facere*

dog, *catulus*
drive, *pellere*
drive off, *prōpulsāre*
during, *inter* or *per*
Dutch, *Batāvus*
dwell, *habitāre*

earth, *terra*
east, *oriēns*
eastern, *orientālis*
easy, *facilis*
egg, *ōvum*
eight, *octō*
eight hundredth, *octingentēsimus*
eighth, *octāvus*
eighty, *octōgintā*
eleventh, *undecimus*
else, *alius, alia, aliud*
embroidered, *pictus, a, um*
emperor, *princeps*
empire, *imperium*
end, *fīnis*
endure, *tolerāre*
enemy, *hostis*
enrol, *cōnscrībere*
enter, *intrāre*
entrust, *mandāre*
even, *etiam*
ever, *umquam*; =always, *semper*
every day, *cotīdiē*
exclaim, *exclāmāre*
expectation, *exspectātiō*
expedition, *expedītiō*
eye, *oculus*

face, *faciēs*
faithful, *fīdus*
famous, *celeber*
far, *procul*
farewell, *valē*
farm, *agellus*
fashion, *modus*
fate, *fortūna*
father, *pater*
fatherland, *patria*

fear, to, *formīdāre*
few, a few, *paucī*
fifth, *quintus*
fifty, *quinquāgintā*
fifty-fifth, *quintus et quinquāgēsimus*
fight, to, *pugnāre*
fine, *pulcher*
fire, *ignis, m.*
first, *prīmus*
five, *quinque*
flag, *vexillum*
fleet, *classis*
folly, *stultitia*
food, *cibus*
foot, *pēs, m.*
football, *follis, m.*
for, *nam* or *enim*
for the sake, *causā*
forbid, *prohibēre*
forces, *cōpiae*
foreigner, *peregrīnus*
forename, *praenōmen*
form, *forma*
fortieth, *quadrāgēsimus*
fortify, *mūnīre*
forty, *quadrāgintā*
forum, *forum*
found, *condere*
foundation, *fundāmentum*
four, *quattuor*
fourteenth, *quartus decimus*
fourth, *quartus*
fowl, *gallīna*
France, *Francogallia*
free, *līber*
free, to, *līberāre*
freedom, *lībertās*
French, the, *Francogallī*
friend, *amīcus*
from, *ā (ab)* or *ē (ex)*
full, *plēnus*

Gallic, *Gallicus*
gas, *āēr*

Gaul, *Gallia*
general, *dux*
German, *Germānus*
Germanic, *Germānicus*
Germany, *Germānia*
give, *dare*
glass vessels, *vitrea*, 2
glorious, *clārus*
glory, *glōria*
god, *deus*
good, *bonus*
gradually, *paulātim*
great, *magnus*
greater, *māior, māius*
greatly, *magnopere*
grief, *dolor*
guard, *custōdīre*
gun, *tormentum*

hair, *capillī*, pl.
hall, *ātrium*
hand, *manus*
happy, *fēlix (fēlīc-)*, 3
harbour, *portus*
hasten, *properāre*
have, *habēre*
hear, *audīre*
help, *auxilium*, 2
high, *altus*
hill, *collis*, m.
himself (Accus.), *sē*
history, *historia*
hold, *tenēre* or *habēre (sermōnem)*
holidays, *fēriae*
home, *domus;* =homewards, *domum*
hope, *spēs*
hope, to, *spērāre*
horse-flesh, *carō equīna*
hour, *hōra*
how, *quam* or *ut*
how many, *quot*
how much, *quantopere*
however, *autem, tamen*
hundred, *centum* ; for 200 see ' two.'
hurrah, *optimē*

hurry, *festīnāre*

if, *sī*
image, *simulācrum*
immense, *ingens*
implore, *implōrāre*
in, *in*, with Abl.
in order that, *ut*
in the house of, *apud*
infantry, *pedester* (adj.)
inhabit, *incolere*
inhabitant, *incola*
inhuman, *inhūmānus*
injury, *iniūria*
into, *in*, with Acc.
Irish, *Hibernicus*
island, *insula*
Isle of Thanet, *Insula Tanatis*
Isle of Wight, *Insula Vectis*

January, *Iānuārius*
jolly, *bellus*
just, *iustus*
Jutland, *paeninsula Cimbrica*

keen, *ācer*
keeper, *custōs*
Kent, *Cantium*
kill, *interficere* (after § 43)
Kimberley, *Adamantopolis*
kind, *benignus*
king, *rex*
kingdom, *regnum*
kitchen, *culina*, 1
know, *scīre*
knowledge, *nōtitia*
known, *nōtus, a, um*

Ladysmith, *Castra Mariāna*
land, *terra* ; lands, *agrī*
land, to, *applicāre*
large, *magnus*

laugh, *rīdēre*
lazy, *piger, pigr-a, -um*
lead, *dūcere*
left, *laevus*
legion, *legiō*
less, *minus*
lessons, *scholae*
let out, *ēmittere*
letter, *epistola* or *lit-terae* ; (of the alphabet), *littera*
liberty, *lībertās*
lie, *iacēre*
life, *vīta*
light, *lux*
like to—, *libenter*, with Verb
listen, *auscultāre*
little, *parvus*
live (=dwell), *habitāre*
live on (=eat), *victi-tāre*, with Abl.
London, *Londinium*
long (adj.), *longus* ; (adv.), *diū*
look, *spectāre*
lose, *āmittere*
love, *amāre*
lunch, *prandium*

Mafeking, *Statiō Be-chuānārum*
make, *facere*
man, *vir* ; =human being, *homō*
manufacture, *fabricāre*
many, *multī, ae, a*
march, *iter facere*
meanwhile, *intereā*
mention, *commemorāre*
merciful, *clēmens*
merry, *hilarus*
message, *nuntius*
midland, *mediterrāneus*
mile, *mille passūs* ; miles, *mīlia passuum*
mind, *animus*
minister, *minister*

miserable, *miser*
missile, *missile*
missionary, *nuntius verbī dīvīnī*
mistaken, to be, *errāre*
mistress, *domina*
Modder River, *Flūmen Turbulentum*
month, *mensis*
moon, *lūna*
morning, in the, *māne*
most bravely, *fortis-simē*
mostly, *plērumque*
mother, *māter*
mountain, *mons*, m.
move, *moveō*
much, *multum*
multitude, *multitūdō*
murder, *trucīdāre*

naked, *nūdus*
name, *nōmen*
name, to, *nōmināre*
Natal, *Terra Nātālis*
near, *prope* or *ad*
necessary, *necesse*
net, *indāgō*
never, *numquam*
nevertheless, *tamen*
new, *novus*
news, *nuntius*
newspapers, *acta diurna*
next, *proximus*
night, *nox* ; by night, *noctū*
nine hundred, *nōngentī*
ninth, *nōnus*
no (=not any), *nullus*
Nones, *Nōnae*
north, *septentriōnēs*
northern, *septentriōnā-lis*
not, *nōn* ; not only, *nōn sōlum* ; not any longer, *nōn iam* ; not yet, *nōndum*
note book, *commentāriī*

nothing, *nihil*
now, *nunc*
nowadays, *hodiē*
nowhere, *nusquam*
number, *numerus*

oblivion, *oblīviō*
ocean, *ōceanus*
October, *Octōber*
officer, *praefectus*
often, *saepe*
on, *in*, with Abl.
on account of, *propter*
once, *quondam*
one, *ūnus, ūna, ūnum*
only, *tantum* or *sōlum*
onto, *in*, with Acc.
open space, *ārea*, 1
order, *imperāre*
origin, *orīgō*
other, *alius, alia, aliud*
ought : see ' behoves '
our, *noster, nostr-a,-um*
out of, *ex* or *ē*
Outlander, *peregrīnus*
over, *super*, with Acc.
overrun, *percurrere*
oyster, *ostrea*

page, *pāgina*, 1
panic, *terror*
part, *pars*
pavement, *pavīmentum*
pay attention, *operam dare*
peace, *pax*
people, a, *populus* ; =persons, *hominēs*
perhaps, *fortasse*
Picts, *Pictī*
picture, *tabula*, 1
pit, *puteus*
pity, *misericordia*
place, *locus*
place, to, *collocāre*
plan, *consilium*
pluck, *virtūs*
poet, *poēta*

port, *portus*
praetor, *praetor*
praise, *laudāre*
prefect, *praefectus*
prepare, *parāre*
prevent, *prohibēre*
provide, *praebēre*
province, *prōvincia*
purpose, *consilium*
put to death, *mortī dare*

queen, *rēgīna*

rank, *ordō*
read, *lectitāre* or *legō* (after § 34)
ready, *parātus*
real, *vērus*
rebellion, *rebelliō*
recall, *revocāre*
receive, *accipere*
red, *ruber, rubr-a, -um*
reign, *regnum*
reign, to, *regnāre*
rejoice, *gaudēre*
remain, *manēre*
remains, *reliquiae*
remote, *remōtus*
republic, *rēspublica*
resolve, *constituere*
reverse, *incommodum*
Rhine, *Rhēnus*
ride, *equitāre*
right, *dexter*
Roman, *Rōmānus*
Rome, *Rōma*
round, *circum*

said (he, she), *inquit*
said (they), *inquiunt*
sail, *nāvigāre*
Saint, *Sanctus*
sake (for the), *causā*
savage, *saevus*
save, *servāre* or *salvum praestāre*
Saxons, *Saxonēs*

say, *dīcere ;* or *inquam, inquis, inquit, inquimus, inquiunt*
school, *lūdus litterārius*
schoolmaster, *magister*
schoolmistress, *magistra*
Scots, *Scōtī*
Scottish, *Scōticus*
sea, *mare*
second, *secundus*
see, see to it, *vidēre ;*
sell, *vēnumdare*
send, *mittere*
send out, *ēmittere*
September, *September*
serve (as a soldier), *mīlitāre*
set up, *collocāre*
seventh, *septimus*
seventieth, *septuāgēsimus*
seventy-eighth, *duodē-octōgēsimus*
shape, *forma,* 1
shell, *concha,* 1
shilling, *dēnārius*
ship, *nāvis*
show, *monstrāre* or *praestāre*
side, *latus (later-),* 3
siege, *obsidiō*
signal, *signum*
signify, *significāre*
Silchester, *Callēva*
silence, *silentium*
sing, *cantāre*
sit down, *sedēre*
situated, *situs ;* to be —, *iacēre*
six, *sex*
six hundred, *sescentī*
sixteenth, *sextus decimus*
sixth, *sextus*
sixtieth, *sexāgēsimus*
slaughter, *trucīdātiō*
slaughter, to, *trucī-*

dāre ; slaughtered, *trucīdātus*
slave, *servus*
slavery, *servitūs*
sleep, *somnus*
smaller, *minor, minus*
so, *tam*
so great, *tantus*
soil, *solum*
soldier, *mīles*
some, *nōnnullī* (of, *ex*)
someday, *aliquandō*
sometimes, *interdum* or *nōnnumquam*
son, *fīlius*
song, *cantus*
soon, *mox*
sorry ; see ' vex '
southern, *merīdiānus*
Spaniard, *Hispanus*
speak, *dīcere*
spear, *hasta,* 1
special, *praecipuus*
square (adj.), *quadrātus*
stand, *stāre*
standard, *signum*
station, *statiō*
stature, *statūra,* 1
storm, to, *expugnāre*
strange, *mīrus*
strengthen, *firmāre*
stretch, *pertinēre*
studies, *studia*
subdue, *dēbellāre*
successfully, *prosperē*
suddenly, *subitō*
surname, *cognōmen*
surrender, *dēdere*
surround, *circumdare*
swim, *natāre*

take, *capere*
take by storm, *expugnāre*
take oneself back, *sē recipere*
teach, *docēre*

tell, *narrāre*, or *dīcere* (after § 32)

temple, *templum*

ten, *decem*

tennis, *lūdus trigōnālis*

tenth, *decimus*

tesselated, *tessellātus*

than, *quam*

that, *quod* (but generally Acc. with Inf.)

then, *tum*

there, *ibi*

thing, *rēs*

think, *cōgitāre*

third, *tertius*

thirtieth, *trīcēsimus*

thirty, *trīgintā*

this, *hīc, haec, hōc*

thousand (a), *mille* ; thousands, *mīlia*

thousandth, *mīllēsimus*

three, *trēs*, m., f.; *tria*, n.

through, *per*

throw, *iacere*

thunder, *tonitrus*

thus, *sīc*

time, *tempus*

to, *ad*

to-day, *hodiē*

together, *ūnā*

toil, *labor*

tolerate, *tolerāre*

to-morrow, *crās*

too, *nimis* ; = also, *quoque*

tower, *turris*

town, *oppidum*

transport, *transportāre*

tremble, *tremere*

trench, *fossa*

tribe, *nātiō* or *gens*

true, *vērus*

try, *operam dare*

tumble, *cadere*

tunic, *tunica*, 1

turbulent, *turbulentus*

twelfth, *duodecimus*

twelve, *duodecim*

twentieth, *vīcēsimus*

twenty, *vīgintī*

two, *duo, duae, duo*

uncle, *patruus*

under, *sub*

unhappy, *miser*

unite, *conciliāre*

unless, *nisi*

until, *dōnec*

upon, *in*

urn, *urna*, 1

use, *ūsus*

veldt, *campī lātī*

verse, *versus*

very-good, *optimus*

very-great, *maximus*

vessel, *nāvigium*

vestibule, *vestibulum*

veteran, *veterānus*

vexes (it), *piget*

victor, *victor*

victory, *victōria*

voice, *vox*

Wales, *Cambria*

walk, *ambulāre*

wall, *mūrus*

want, *inopia*

war, *bellum*

warlike, *ferox (ferōc-)*, 3

water, *aqua*

wave, *unda*

well, *puteus*

well (Adv.), *bene*

west, *occidens*

western, *occidentālis*

what (in a question), *quid*, Plur. *quae* ; (not in a question), *quod*

what o'clock, *quota hōra*

when (in a question), *quandō* ; (not in a question), *cum*

whence, *unde*

where, *ubi*

which, *quī, quae, quod*

while, *dum*

white, *albus, a, um*

who (in a question), *quis* ; (not in a question), *quī* or *quae*

whole, *tōtus*

why, *cūr*

wife, *uxor*

win a victory over, *victoriam reportāre ā* (or *ab*)

window, *fenestra*

wing (of a building or army), *cornū*

with, *cum* (put after *mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs*)

within, *intrā*

without, *sine*

wolf, *lupus*

woman, *fēmina*

worship, *adōrāre*

wound, *vulnerāre*

write, *scrībere*

write out, *exscrībere*

writer, *scriptor*

year, *annus*

yellow, *flāvus*

yesterday, *herī*

yet (after 'not'), *-dum*

Summary of Grammatical Rules

(In Alphabetical Order)

Agreement.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in Person and Number :—
>   animo alacri *lectito*. § 1. 11.
>   tune, Alexander, Pictus *es* ? § 21. 2.
>   vita Agricolae me *delectat*. § 1. 10.

2. An adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number and Case :—
>   reges *Britannici* vel reginae *Britannicae* in Britannia
>   regnaverunt. § 3. 2.

This rule applies not only to examples like the above, in which the adjective is called an *Attribute* of the noun, but also to examples like the following, in which the adjective is said to be *predicated* of the noun :—
>   vita Agricolae *difficilis* est et *obscura*. § 1. 10.
>   Horatius incolas Britanniae *feros* nominat. § 4. 6.

3. A noun standing in apposition to another noun agrees with it in Case :—
>   librum de vita Agricolae, *ducis celebris*, mihi dedit. § 1. 7.
>   ad flumen *Tamesam* penetraverat. § 2. 5.
>   ex insula *Mona* properavit. § 9. 4.

4. The relative pronoun *qui, quae, quod* stands in the Case in which it would stand if the subordinate clause were a separate sentence, and it agrees in Gender and Number with the noun or pronoun to which it refers :—
>   necesse fuit Hadriano, *qui* princeps Romanorum fuit,
>   magnum vallum aedificare, *cuius* reliquiae hodie spec-
>   tantur. § 20. 7.

Cases without Prepositions.

Note the following uses of the **Accusative without a preposition** :—

(1) As the Object of a verb or infinitive :—
>   vita Agricolae *me* delectat. § 1. 9.
>   *nos* non pigebit hic sedere. § 22. 8.⎱ Impersonal verbs.
>   Angelos *eos* vocari oportet. § 28. 18.⎰
>   necesse fuit Hadriano *magnum vallum* aedificare. § 20. 8.

(2) as the Subject of an infinitive :—
>   Tacitus *eum* victoriam reportavisse affirmat.   § 2. 10.
>   *se* in loco iniquo esse viderunt.   § 39. 19.

(3) denoting ' time how long ' :—
>   apud magistrum meum iam *septem dies* sum.   § 31. 2.
>   abhinc *annos duos* (' two years ago,' § 25. 5).

(4) denoting ' how far ' in space :—
>   *ducenta milia* passuum distat.   § 42. 8.

(5) denoting ' how much ' :—
>   vita Agricolae *multum* me delectat.   § 1. 7.

(6) denoting ' place whither ' in names of Towns (= ' to ') :—
>   Caractacum *Romam* deportaverunt.   § 5. 26.
>   cur non *Rutupias* hodie ambulatis ?   § 18. 3.

Note the following uses of the **Ablative without a preposition** :—

(1) denoting separation (= ' from ') with certain verbs and adjectives :—
>   *scholis* liberi sumus.   § 55. 18.

(2) denoting instrument, means or manner (= ' with ' or ' by ') :—
>   Britannos velut *indagine* circumdederant.   § 13. 16.
>   *longo die* fatigati eramus.   § 29. 6.
>   *animo alacri* lectito.   § 1. 11.

(3) denoting the measure of difference (= ' by ') :—
>   *multo* plures sunt.   § 35. 6.

(4) denoting ' time when ' (= ' at ' or ' in ' or ' on ') :—
>   *eo tempore* rex Britannorum erat.   § 3. 15.
>   *anno tertio et quadragesimo* regnabat.   § 5. 5.
>   haec *nonis Novembribus* scripsi.   § 39. 22.

(5) denoting price (= ' at ') :—
>   gallinae *denariis viginti* constant.   § 50. 19.

(6) denoting quality (= ' of ' or ' with ') :—
>   Britanni viri *animo forti* erant.   § 2. 14.
>   pueros *facie pulchra, oculis caeruleis* vidit.   § 28. 5.
> ☞ In this last use alone (No. 6) the Ablative is *adjectival* ;
>   in all other uses it is *adverbial*.

N

The **Dative** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes ' to ' or ' for ' :—

> *filio suo* nomen Britannico dedit.   § 5. 13.
> *toti insulae* nomen est Britanniae.   § 21. 7.
> libertas *eis* cara erat.   § 4. 11.
> quid utilius erat *toti orbi* terrarum ?   § 15. 6.
> *Batavis* licet esse civibus Britannicis.   § 56. 61.
> unus homo *nobis* cunctando restituit rem.   § 49. 10.
> *novis rebus* student.   § 35. 17.

But in the following uses one of the Datives may be translated without ' to ' or ' for ' :—

> ei Britannia non erat *curae*.   § 2. 20.
> cui erat *usui* ? (' of use ' or ' useful,' § 23. 17.)
> tormenta navalia nostris *auxilio* fuerunt.   § 39. 11.

So too the Dative with certain verbs :—

> *imperio Romano* praeerant.   § 3. 19.
> *reipublicae nostrae* prosit.   § 48. 18.
> tributum *Britannis* imperaverat.   § 2. 8.

The **Genitive** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes ' of ' :—

> vita *Agricolae* (§ 1. 9).   Annales *Taciti* (§ 1. 15).   rex
>   *Britannorum* (§ 3. 5).
> nomen *regis* (' the name of the king,' § 3. 11).
> Britanni *huius faciei* sunt.   § 28. 11.

But in the following uses the Genitive may be translated without ' of ' :—

> num quid *novi* vidisti ? (' anything new,' § 31. 7.)
> ne quid *detrimenti* capiat (' any harm,' § 52. 9).
> nomen *Germanorum* (' the name Germans,' § 34. 19).

The **Locative** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes ' at ' :—

> *Devae, Iscae, Viroconii* (§ 5. 22), *Dubris* (§ 27. 5).
> *domi* (§ 29. 6).

> ☞ In Singulars of the 1st and 2nd declensions the Locative
>   is the same in form as the Genitive ; in Singulars of
>   the 3rd declension and all plurals it is the same in form
>   as the Ablative.

Gender of Nouns.

1. Nouns denoting PERSONS are masculine if they denote male persons, feminine if they denote female persons. This rule is the same for all declensions :—

> e.g. *amita, Boadicea*, fem. ; **nauta, agricola, Caligula**, masc.
> *mater, uxor*, fem. ; **pater, frater, victor**, masc.
> **princeps, rex, custos, miles, Cicero**, masc.

2. The gender of nouns NOT DENOTING PERSONS may be mostly found by the following rules :—

(*a*) Those of the 1st declension are all feminine, e.g. *vita*.

(*b*) Those of the 2nd declension in **us** or **r** are nearly all masculine, e.g. **campus, liber** (except names of trees, which are feminine, e.g. *ulmus*) ; those of the 2nd declension in UM are all neuter, e.g. CAELUM.

(*c*) Those of the 3rd declension which form the nominative singular by adding an *s* are mostly feminine, e.g. *hiem-s, pax* (= *pac-s*), *aeta-s* (= *aetat-s*), *virtū-s* (= *virtūt-s*); *navi-s, clade-s* : except masc. **pes, sanguis, mons, pons ; collis, fines** (plur.), **ignis, orbis, mensis**, and a few others.
Those of the 3rd declension which form the nominative singular without adding an *s* are mostly—
feminine if the nom. sing. ends in *io, do* or *go*,
> e.g. *regio, grando* (except **ordo**, m.), *origo, indago,*
especially those in -*tio*, -*tudo*,
> e.g. *mutatio, natio* ; *multitudo, testudo* :
neuter if the nom. sing. ends in MEN, US,* UR, or E,
e.g. NOMEN, GENUS, ROBUR, MARE :
masculine in other cases,
> e.g. **amor, calor ; agger, aer, imber ; sol ; sermo ; pulvis,* mos. ***

(*d*) Those of the 4th declension in **us** are nearly all masculine, e.g. **exercitus** (except *domus, Idus, manus*, fem.) ; those of the 4th declension in U are all neuter, e.g. CORNU.

(*e*) Those of the 5th declension are all feminine, e.g. *facies* (except **dies**, which is generally masculine, though sometimes feminine in the sense 'time': singular number)

---

* The final *s* in these cases is not an *addition* to the stem, but part of it : the stem ends in *s*, but this *s* is turned into *r* in the genitive and other cases. Note -*ŭs* neuter, -*ūs* feminine (e.g. *virtūs*).

Gerund and Gerundive.

The Gerund is a noun, corresponding to an English noun in
-*ing* (formed from a verb) :—

unus homo nobis *cunctando* restituit rem.   § 49. 10 ;

and it takes the same case (or no case) as the verb from which
it is formed :—

regem spectandi cupidi erant.   § 6. 4.

toti orbi terrarum *imperitandi* cupidi estis.   § 6. 14.

The Gerundive is an adjective (formed from a verb), which,
agreeing with a noun or pronoun, gives the same sense as the
Gerund with the Accusative :—

proelii spectandi (= *proelium spectandi*) causa.   § 9. 16.

coloniae defendendae (= *coloniam defendendi*) causa. § 36. 7.

de *ea intranda* cogitavit.   § 2. 22.

Moods.

The Indicative mood expresses fact :—

Kalendae *sunt* hodie Septembres.   § 1. 1.

multa de bello *audimus*.   § 40. 2.

The Imperative mood expresses command or prayer :—

audite, pueri !   § 40. 7.

unum foedus omnis *esto* nominis Britannici !   § 49. 15.

The Subjunctive (or Injunctive) mood expresses desire, and
may generally be translated by ' may ' or ' shall ' (or by ' might '
or ' should ' in the past imperfect tense) :—

Deo *sit* gratia !   § 51. 20.

Deus salvam *praestet* reginam !   § 49. 29.

ne *desperemus* !   § 49. 7.

The Subjunctive mood often stands in subordinate clauses :—

(*a*)   introduced by *ut*, ' that ' :—

operam dant *ut* oppidum *expugnent*.   § 50. 4.

ita facta est *ut* ad terram *applicetur*.   § 50. 25.

tantus imber cadit *ut* sol *obscuretur* (' is darkened ').
   § 50. 11.

operam dabat ut castra obsidione *liberaret*.   § 54. 3.

(*b*)   introduced by *ne*, ' that . . . not ' or ' lest ' :—

videat *ne* quid detrimenti respublica *capiat* ! § 52. 9.

hostem circumdedit *ne* evadere *posset*.   § 53. 8.

(*c*)   introduced by *qui, quae, quod* :—

Caledones emittit *qui* impetum in Batavos *dent*. § 51.5.

diem constituunt *quo* impetum *dent*.   § 50. 5.

fossas foderat *in quibus* sui tuti *essent*.   § 53. 7.

Order of Words within the sentence or clause.

RULE 1.—Anything that goes with a Noun (excepting a preposition) is generally put AFTER that Noun in Latin :—

> Kalendae *Septembres*—animo *alacri*—patruus *meus*—Britannia *nostra antiqua*—veterani *illi Romani*—vita *Agricolae*. (This is the usual place of the Genitive.)

Except Demonstrative, Interrogative and Numeral Adjectives (including those Adjectives of Quantity which mean ' all,' ' some,' ' many,' ' few,' ' great,' ' small ') :—

> *id* bellum—*hic* vir—*illa* femina—*aliud* tempus—*tantus* imber—*quanta* mutatio—*quo* tempore—*duae* horae—*primus* mensis—*omnes* homines—*nonnulli* homines—*multi* homines—*pauci* anni—*magna* multitudo—*parva* manus.

RULE 2.—Anything that goes with a Verb or an Adjective or an Adverb is generally put BEFORE that Verb, Adjective or Adverb in Latin :—

> *mane* lectito—*in mari* natamus—*me* delectat—*non* possum : *nonnullis in locis* difficilis—victoria *a Britannis* reportata : *multo* ante (§ 41. 1)—*non* revera—*non* saepe.

The Dative generally stands before the Accusative :—

> *ludo trigonali operam* damus.
> *libris duas horas* cotidie do.

☞ As a general rule finish off one clause before beginning another.

Passive Voice.

For the formation of the Passive Voice from the Active in the Present, Past Imperfect and Future tenses, *see* page 72 ; for the formation of the Perfect tenses, *see* page 81.

The *person by whom* something is done is expressed by *a* or *ab* with the Ablative :—

> *ab aliis imperatoribus* oppida expugnabantur. § 16. 9.

Note the passive construction with a vague subject :—

> *pugnabitur*—' it will be fought ' = ' a fight will be fought,' § 41. 16.

Prepositions.

Most prepositions take the Accusative in classical prose, but the following six (and a few others not used in this book) always take the Ablative :—

a *Caledonibus*, ab *hostibus*   cum *Caractaco*, *me*cum
pro *patria*   sine *mora*
e *Britannia*, ex *Annalibus*   de *Britannis*, de *ira*

and the following two take either the Ablative or the Accusative, according to the meaning :—

in when it means ' in ' or ' on ' takes the Abl.

    when it means ' into ' or ' onto ' takes the Accus.

sub when it means ' under ' or ' down in ' takes the Abl.

    when it means ' towards ' or ' down into ' takes the Accus.

e.g. *in mari* natare ; *in mare* pellere :

    sub signis Romanis militare ; *sub vesperum.*

Pronouns and Adjectives connected with them.

SUUS, SUA, SUUM (' his own,' ' their own ') is an Adjective, and generally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence or clause (printed in black type) :—

    Claudius filio *suo* nomen Britannico dedit. § 5. 13.

EIUS (' his ') and EORUM, EARUM (' their ') are Genitive cases of the Pronoun *is, ea, id,* and generally refer to some person or thing mentioned in a previous sentence :—

    Claudius expeditionem contra Britannos paravit : consilium *eius* erat Britanniam debellare. § 5. 1–4.

SE, SUI, SIBI, SE (' himself,' ' themselves ') is a Pronoun, and generally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence or clause :—

    Caledones trans Clotam et Bodotriam *se* congregant. § 11. 16.

    templum, ubi **veterani** *se* occultaverant, cremant. § 9. 3.

IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM is generally an Adjective like the English -self in ' myself,' ' himself,' ' themselves ' :—

    cupidi erant regem *ipsum* spectandi. § 6. 4.

    tormenta in *ipso* tempore apportaverant. § 39. 10.

Questions.

Questions which can be answered by ' yes ' or ' no ' are introduced by *num* or *-ne* :—

    num vos viri minus fortes eritis ? § 8. 21.

    tune, Alexander, Pictus es ? § 21. 1.

    non*ne* melius erit in castello cenare ? § 18. 14.

☞ *Nonne* is simply the negative *non* with the *-ne* attached to it ; the *-ne* turns the negative statement into a negative question.

Questions which cannot be answered by ' yes ' or ' no ' are introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs (without any *num* or *-ne*) :—

    quis hoc castellum delevit ? § 24. 1.

    quo tempore in Caledoniam migraverunt ? § 19. 15.

    cur non Rutupias hodie ambulamus ? § 18. 2.

    quando in viam nos dabimus ? § 18. 20.

ORA MARITIMA

A Latin Story for Beginners, with Grammar and Exercises.
By Professor E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, D.Litt.

Cloth 8vo, price **2s.** (Subject to Discount).

☞ *Now in use in the Manchester Grammar School and its Preparatory Schools.*

RECENT OPINIONS.

" *Ora Maritima* does for Latin what the modern oral methods do for French and German, i.e. it makes the beginner realize that the language is really a vehicle of expression, whereby commonsense notions can be conveyed. From personal experience I can testify how a few weeks are sufficient to gain this all-important idea ; and it is worth adding that in a school which I have recently inspected a small boy of eleven employed his leisure time in working through *Ora Maritima* to the end and then came to his master for the sequel, *Pro Patria.* There was no need to tell that boy that Latin is something more than a phalanx of declinable nouns and verbs."—ALFRED HUGHES, M.A., Organizing Professor of Education in the University of Birmingham.

" The books are admirable, and under the guidance of a skilful teacher their use in class is followed by excellent results."—Professor MICHAEL E. SADLER, LL.D., Manchester.

" I have started my own small boys in Latin with *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria*, and am delighted with both books ; they indicate a method which is attractive to the child without being superficial."—Sir ARTHUR HORT M.A., Harrow School.

" The book is just A1, clearly right in conception and admirably executed.' —P. A. BARNETT, M.A., H.M. Chief Inspector for the Training of Teachers.

" The most attractive introduction to Latin that has come under my notice, and I have seen most of them in the secondary schools which I inspect." —JOHN KERR, LL.D., late H.M. Chief Inspector of Schools and Training Colleges in Scotland.

" It makes a new departure in the teaching of Latin that ought to be pro-ductive of great good. I am in entire sympathy with its method."—A. E. SCOUGAL, H.M. Chief Inspector in the West of Scotland.

" *Ora Maritima* proves an ideal book for a first reader."—W. H. D. ROUSE, Litt.D., Head Master of the Perse School, Cambridge.

" I have used *Ora Maritima* in actual teaching, and have found it both interesting and instructive to the pupil."—Professor J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D.

" This is a charming book. We know no better epithet by which to de-scribe such an introduction to the Latin tongue. . . . It is giving a strong recommendation to say, as we gladly do, that our author has given us the ideal book which he formerly described."—*Secondary Education.*

" We can conceive no more delightful book for the induction of youth into the paths of Latin."—*The Monthly Register.*

" An interesting experiment, ably carried out."—*Journal of Education.*

" It aims at teaching a little thoroughly, and it succeeds."—*School World.*

" An extremely simple and interesting book."—*Literary World.*

PRO PATRIA

Sequel to ORA MARITIMA, *with Grammar and Exercises to the end of the Regular Accidence.*

Cloth 8vo, price **2s. 6d.** (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

RECENT OPINIONS.

"I have had both *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* prescribed for use in our earliest standards. They were acknowledged by the Committee which passed them to be unequalled for the interesting way in which they presented the subject. I think no praise is too high for them."—W. G. WEDDERSPOON, M.A., H.M. Inspector of European Schools and Training Colleges, Burma.

"Both books have been used here with great advantage to both teachers and taught."—R. HAYDON, M.A., County Secondary School, Helston.

"In a long experience I have found *Pro Patria* quite the best book which I have ever come across for arousing and sustaining the interest of small boys in their elementary stage of Latin translation."—The Rev. PHILIP CRICK, M.A., St. Ronan's, West Worthing.

"Professor Sonnenschein's books do not 'gild the pill.' They merely make the pill a healthy one."—*The Week's Survey.*

THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

A Greek Story for Beginners on the same lines as the above, with Exercises (covering the Regular Accidence), Vocabularies and Maps.

By CHARLES D. CHAMBERS, M.A.

Cloth 8vo, price **3s.** (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

In this book, as in the Latin volumes of this series, special attention has been devoted to correctness of idiom in the text.

OPINIONS.

"At once felicitous in design and able in execution, containing incidents of thrilling interest written in the grave Thucydidean style."—*Journal of Education.*

"Most ably planned and most successfully executed. It gives reality and interest to the early study of Greek as distinguished from the study of Greek grammar, furnishing attractive reading and cutting away the mass of grammatical detail not immediately necessary."—*Educational Times.*

"A most valuable school book. The narrative is bright and interesting. We welcome this book and strongly recommend it to all schoolmasters."—*The Oxford Magazine.*

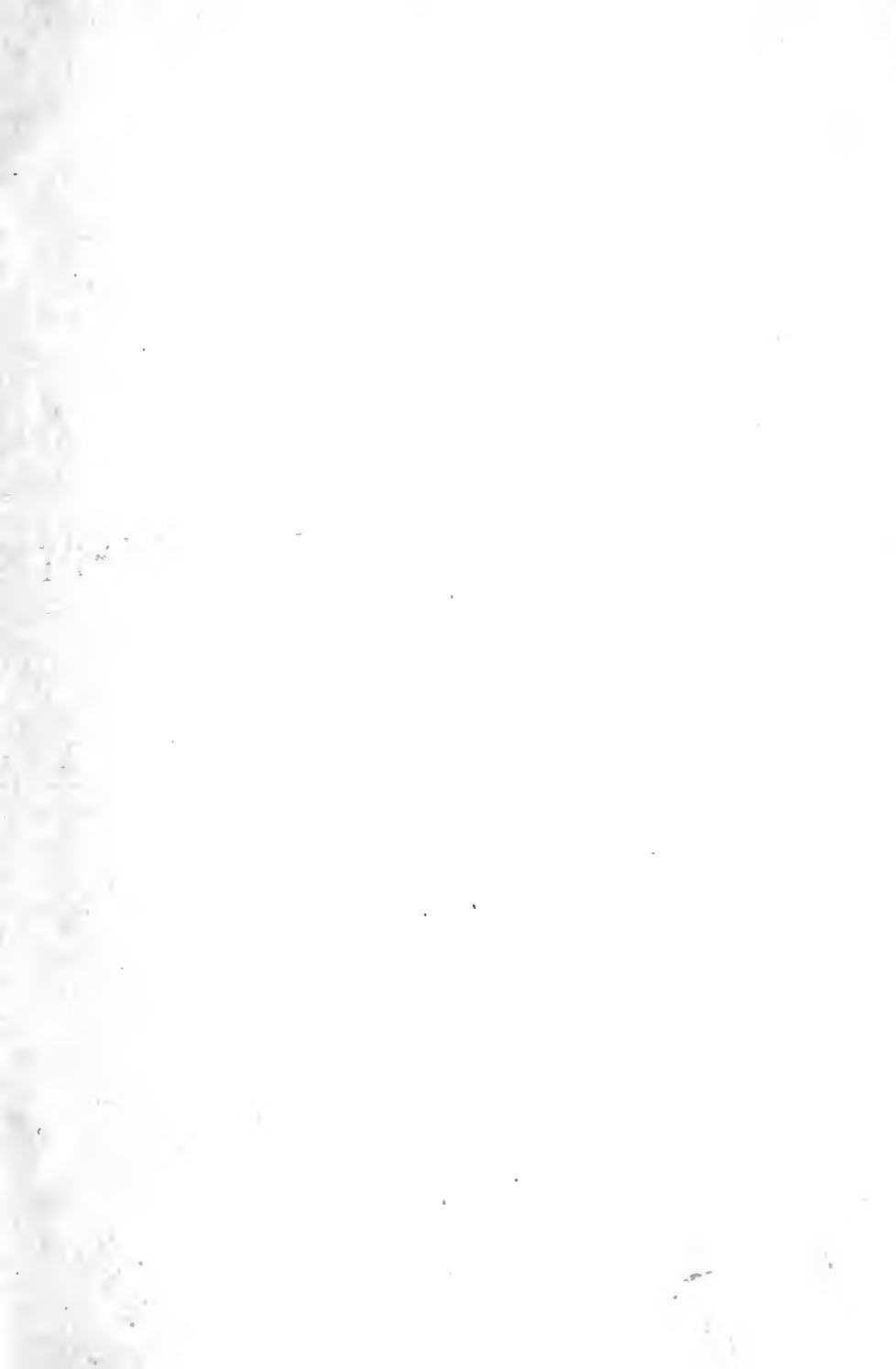## IN PREPARATION.

A German Story for Beginners on the same lines

AM RHEIN

By C. WICHMANN, PH.D., Professor of German in the University of Sheffield.